

A HISTORY  
OF VIRGINIA  
AND VIRGINIANS

MAURY



W. B. JOHNSON PUBLISHING CO.  
RICHMOND

1607

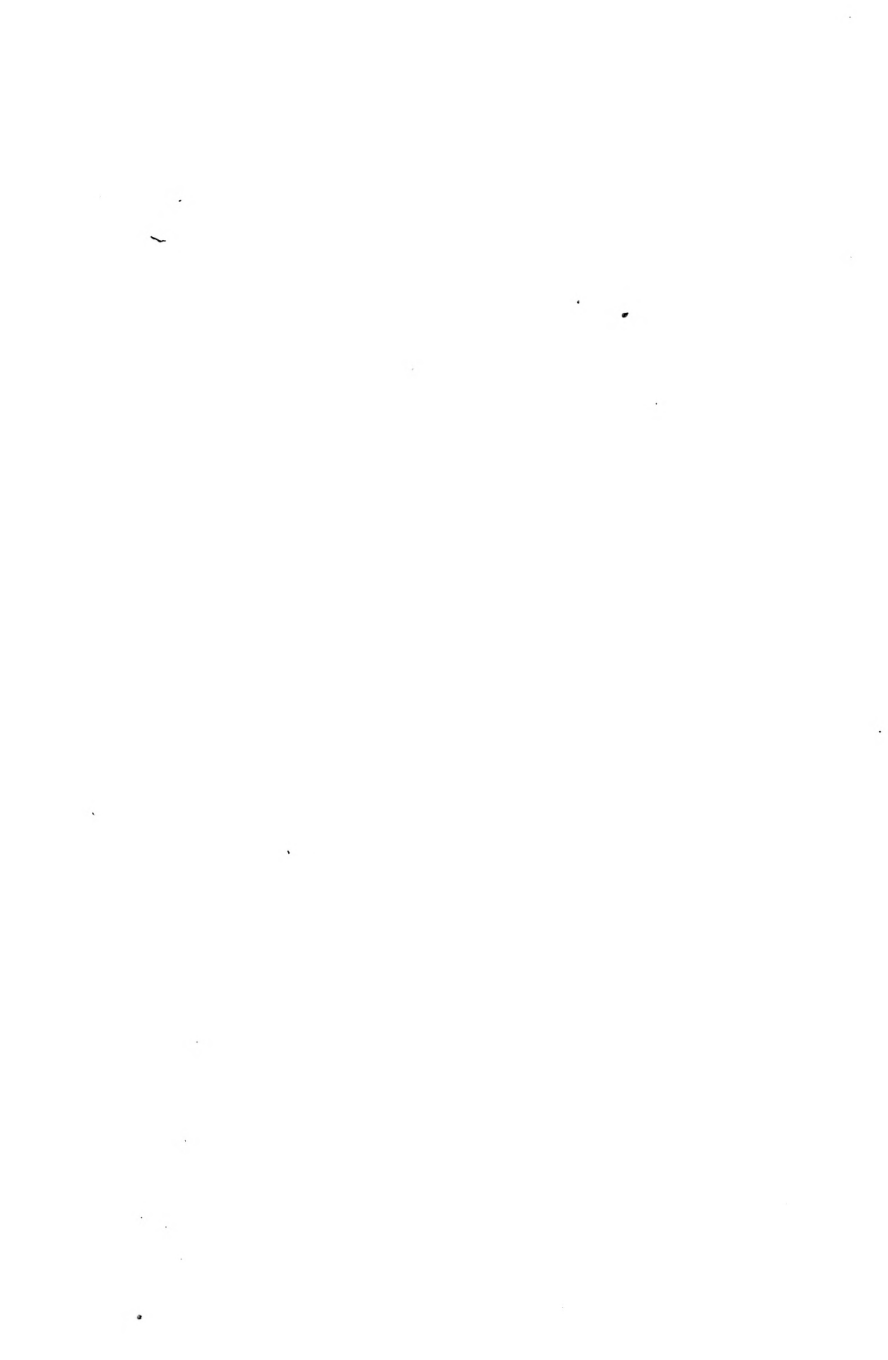
1896

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chap.        Copyright No.       

Shelf 1441

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.











HOUDON'S STATUE OF WASHINGTON. IN THE CAPITOL.

A

# YOUNG PEOPLE'S HISTORY

OF

## Virginia and Virginians.

---

For use in Schools and in the homes of  
Virginians.

---

BY

DABNEY HERNDON MAURY,

Author of "Recollections of a Virginian" and of "Maury's Drill for  
Mounted Men."

---

RICHMOND, VA.:  
B. F. JOHNSON PUBLISHING CO.  
1896.

[Copyrighted, 1896, by DABNEY H. MAURY.]

Recd. in Jan. 7/30

---

I dedicate this little book

TO MY DAUGHTER,

**Mrs. Rose Maury Pollard,**

who urged me to write it.

During the early morning hours of last summer, I penned the rough pages, which she re-wrote.

Whatever may be found of grace or beauty herein is hers.

THE AUTHOR.

---



## INTRODUCTION.

---

I HAVE been induced to write this little book in the hope that a brief recital of the history of my native State may awaken in my young countrymen a higher appreciation of the intelligence, courage and patriotism of their forefathers, by imparting a more exact knowledge of the sacrifices which they made and of the prominent part they bore in the establishment of civil and religious liberty on this continent, and in the upbuilding of the great American Republic, designed to transmit to their posterity the priceless heritage won by their valor; and, also, for the purpose of countervailing the false impressions made by so many of the histories which have been, and are even now, used in our schools, as to the motives which inspired the conduct of their fathers in the events leading up to and culminating in the great struggle of 1861-'65.

That the Virginians of 1861 were inspired by the same patriotic spirit which animated the Virginians of 1776; that they contended for the right of self-government as taught in the Declaration of Independence, and in withdrawing from the Union exercised a right which arose out of the very nature and history of the Federal Constitution, cannot be denied by any honest, candid, intelligent student of our country's history. While this is true, the Virginian of to-day recognizing that the Union established by his fathers, founded upon the consent of the States, has, by the arbitrament of battle, been converted into "an indissoluble Union of indestructible States," is as loyal to

the New Union, and modified Constitution, to which he looks as the palladium of human liberty, as his fathers were to the old, and is as ready to shed his blood in its defence.

In the preparation of this work I have freely availed myself of the admirable books of John Esten Cooke, Miss McGill, Mrs. Susan Pendleton Lee and Philip A. Bruce.

I have not found occasion to tell the history of any other State or people save Virginia and her sons. Her glories are all her own. She has no shame.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER.	PAGE.
I. Columbus—Effect of His Discoveries—John Cabot—Queen Elizabeth—Sir Walter Raleigh and Sir Humphrey Gilbert—Their Voyages . . . . .	9
II. The Fate of Raleigh—The Virginia Company—The First Charter—Expedition under Newport—Settlement of Jamestown—Captain John Smith . . . . .	18
III. The Indians . . . . .	25
IV. The Colony—Hostility of the Indians—Sickness—The Gold Fever—Smith's Explorations—His Capture and Rescue by Pocahontas . . . . .	34
V. Smith Explores Chesapeake Bay—An Addition to the Colony—Coronation of Powhatan—Scarcity of Corn—Smith's Visit to Powhatan and Opecananough—Lord Delaware . . . . .	41
VI. The Shipwrecked Colonists Upon Bermuda—Arrival in Virginia—Smith Deposed—His Accident and Departure—Troubles of the Colony—"The Starving Time." Jamestown Deserted—Arrival of Lord Delaware . . . . .	47
VII. Lord Delaware's Government—Sir Thomas Dale—Capture of Pocahontas—Her Marriage and Death—Death of Powhatan—Land Assigned to Colonists . . . . .	54
VIII. Dale Returns to England—Argall's Rule—First Colonial Assembly—New Charter—Cargo of Maidens Arrive—Negroes Imported—Slavery—Massacre of 1622 . . . . .	59
IX. Sir John Harvey—Religious Intolerance—Lord Baltimore—William Claiborne—Sir William Berkeley—Massacre of 1644 . . . . .	64
X. The Civil War in England—Loyalty of Virginia—Yields to Cromwell—The Restoration . . . . .	71
XI. Bacon's Rebellion . . . . .	76
XII. Bacon's Rebellion, Continued—Death of Charles II.—King James II.—William and Mary . . . . .	81
XIII. Growth of the Colony—William and Mary College—Queen Anne—Governor Spotswood—Colonel Byrd—The Huguenots—The Scotch-Irish . . . . .	87
XIV. The Character of the Population—Employments and Condition of the People in Colonial Times . . . . .	95

XV. The Employments and Condition of the People, Continued . . . . .	102
XVI. George Washington—His Boyhood—Surveyor for Lord Fairfax—Mission to the French—In Command of the Virginia Troops—Aide to General Braddock—Patrick Henry—The Parsons' Case—The Stamp Act . .	115
XVII. Resistance to Parliamentary Taxation—Non-Importation Resolutions—The First Congress—George Mason—Andrew Lewis . . . . .	122
XVIII. Story of Lewis, Continued—The Virginia Convention—Removal of the Powder—Mustering of the Minutemen—Payment for the Powder—Lord North's Peace Measures . . . . .	129
XIX. Committee Appointed—Virginia Resolutions—Declaration of Independence—Disestablishment of the Church—Primogeniture—George Rogers Clarke . . . . .	136
XX. Progress of the War—Arnold's Invasion—Lord Cornwallis—Tarleton's Raids—Alliance with France—Yorktown . . . . .	142
XXI. Virginia at the Close of the Revolution . . . . .	148
XXII. The Future Government—The Convention of 1787—The Opposition in Virginia—The Government Established. Thomas Jefferson—His Administration—Lewis and Clarke's Explorations—Aaron Burr—Judge Marshall. . . . .	155
XXIII. Death of Washington and Henry—Virginia Presidents—Negro Insurrections—Slavery and the Slave-Trade . . . . .	162
XXIV. President Lincoln—Bad Faith as to Sumter—Preparations for Invasion—The South Forced to Defend Itself . . . . .	174
XXV. Some of the Events of the War in Virginia . . . . .	180
XXXVI. The Cruel Conduct of the War—Medicines Contraband—Destruction of Private Property—Hunter's Vandalism—Dahlgren's Raid—Responsibility for the Suffering of Prisoners—Treatment of President Davis . . . . .	199
XXVII. Condition of Virginia—Enfranchisement of the Negroes—Division of the State—Virginia's Progress—Confederate Monuments . . . . .	205
XXVIII. The Virginians—The First Settlers—Class Distinctions—What Virginians Have Accomplished— . . . . .	210
A List of those who have filled the Executive Office from 1606 to 1896. . . . .	218
Virginia Bill of Rights . . . . .	222
Declaration of Independence . . . . .	224
Constitution of the United States . . . . .	227

# YOUNG PEOPLE'S HISTORY OF VIRGINIA AND VIRGINIANS.

## CHAPTER I.

COLUMBUS—EFFECT OF HIS DISCOVERIES—JOHN CABOT—QUEEN ELIZABETH—  
SIR WALTER RALEIGH AND SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT—THEIR VOYAGES.

**Columbus.**—Before the time of Columbus the continents of North America and South America were entirely unknown to the people of the Old World, who supposed that Europe, Asia and Africa, and the islands lying near their coasts, were the whole earth. In 1492 Columbus, by



COLUMBUS LANDING ON THE BAHAMAS.

sailing westward across the Atlantic Ocean, discovered first the Bahamas, and subsequently the West India Islands, and on his third voyage the South American continent.

**Effect of His Discoveries.**—These discoveries by Columbus quickened the spirit of adventure among the maritime nations of Europe, each desiring to share in the wealth, as well as the glory, to be had in those new-found lands.

**The Spaniards and Portuguese.**—Italy furnished some of the best sailors, but the most active and enterprising

nations were the Spaniards and Portuguese, between whom the Pope of Rome assumed to divide the New World. The former made many voyages along the southern coast of North America and conquered Mexico and Peru, but other nations were by no means idle and paid little heed to the Pope's orders.

**The English.**—In 1497 John Cabot, a native of Italy, but at that time a merchant of Bristol, in England, and his son, Sebastian, under a patent from King Henry VII., made the first voyage attempted by the English and discovered the North American continent off the sterile coast of Labrador. Sailing for some distance along its shores, he took possession of the country in the name of the King of England. This was fourteen months before Columbus ever saw the continent of America, and two years before the ship of Amerigo Vespucci, from whom it took its name, left a European port.



JOHN CABOT.

**England's Claim.**—English vessels would sometimes visit the fisheries which, within seven years after the discovery by Cabot, had been established on the coast of Nova Scotia and Newfoundland by the hardy mariners of Britainy and Normandy in France, but no effort was made to settle the country for nearly a hundred years; nevertheless, the discovery by Cabot gave England a claim to a large portion of the North American continent, which she afterwards successfully asserted.

**Drake's Voyage Around the World.**—In 1579 Sir Francis Drake, an Englishman, passed through the Straits of Magellan, explored the Pacific coast and returned to Europe by way of the Cape of Good Hope, making the second voyage around the world, the first having been made by Magellan, a Portuguese navigator, in the service of Spain, in 1520.



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE.

**Queen Elizabeth.**—In the month of January, 1558,

more than sixty years after the first voyage of Cabot, the Princess Elizabeth, daughter of King Henry VIII., was crowned Queen of England. She was then twenty-five years of age, and her coronation was the occasion of great rejoicing among the English people, who hoped for a new era of peace and prosperity at home under her reign, and in this they were not disappointed.



QUEEN ELIZABETH.

**Her Character and Government.**—The queen's early years had been passed in virtual captivity, and her youth clouded with many sorrows, but she showed a kind and forgiving spirit towards those from whom she had received much unkindness, and she managed the business of her government with equal prudence and wisdom. She encouraged agriculture, trade and navigation, and so increased her navy that she has been called "The Queen of the Northern Seas." Her wise government was respected at home and abroad, and about her throne were gathered a group of the most remarkable men who figure on the pages of England's history.

**Her Interest in Colonization.**—Her reign is of peculiar interest to the student of Virginia history, because she it was who gave the first impetus and the greatest encouragement to those adventurous spirits who early turned the tide of emigration toward this State, which received its name in honor of the "Virgin Queen." Up to the date of Elizabeth's accession England had done but little in the way of discovery and had made no progress in the establishment of colonies. Spain and France had far surpassed her in these directions, and only a mischance prevented the establishment of a Spanish colony on James River, in which event the whole region would have owed allegiance to Spain instead of England, and our history and position to-day would be very different.\*

\* Lucas DeAyllon, in 1526, began the settlement of San Miguel, it is said, on the very spot on which Jamestown was built. The death of DeAyllon, the rivalry and strife between his successors and sickness, so discouraged the colonists that the settlement was abandoned.

**Sir Walter Raleigh.**—Among all the gallant band of knights and gentlemen who thronged the court of Elizabeth there was not one more attractive than Walter Raleigh. Handsome in person, his ready wit and his brave and resolute character soon won him the especial favor of the queen, who conferred upon him the honor of knighthood, and hence he is known in history as Sir Walter Raleigh.



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

**His Introduction to the Queen.**—There is a very pretty story told of his first introduction to Elizabeth, which illustrates his cleverness and the grace

of his manners, which is worth remembering. At that time the streets of London were not what they are now, and it happened that one day as the queen was going with a gay company of knights and ladies to take her pleasure on the water, that she came to a muddy place which she could not pass without soiling her shoes. While she was hesitating what to do a young gentleman sprang forward and spread his cloak upon the ground, and the queen passed over it dryshod. Of course, she enquired the name of the gallant young cavalier, and learned it was Walter Raleigh. We are told that he “spoiled a handsome cloak and gained many suits” at one and the same time, for, from that day, the queen showered favors upon him and would have made him one of her attendants.

**First Expedition Under Gilbert.**—But Raleigh’s brave and adventurous spirit was not satisfied with the life of ease and idleness at court. His attention and interest had long been directed toward the western world, where, since Columbus’s first voyage, in 1492, many new discoveries and settlements had been made. Together with his step-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, he besought the queen to give him the means to fit out an expedition which might claim for England a share in the rich treasures to

be found beyond the seas. She readily complied with his wishes and endorsed his plans, and in 1583 a fleet, under the command of Gilbert, set sail for the shores of America. Elizabeth sent him a jeweled anchor and a message of encouragement. He succeeded in reaching the island of Newfoundland, but his ships were soon afterwards scattered by a storm, compelling his return. His own vessel went down on the homeward voyage while he was endeavoring to cheer and encourage his people, reminding them that "we are as near heaven at sea as on land," and bidding them "be of good cheer."

**Further Efforts.**—Sir Walter was much grieved when he learned of the disaster, but he was not discouraged, and he immediately set about fitting out fresh ships for another effort. Indeed, most of his life was devoted to this object, and all of his private fortune was spent in attempts to establish English colonies in America. So many were his voyages, so tireless his efforts, and so unswerving his courage and devotion to this end, that he was called the "Shepherd of the Ocean."

**Voyage of Amidas and Barlow.**—It was in the summer of 1584 that two vessels, sent by him under the command of Captains Amidas and Barlow, reached the coast of what is now North Carolina. They were charmed with the beauty of the country, its magnificent forests, the luxuriance of its vegetation, and the abundance of its game. They were treated with kindness by the natives, who called their country Wingandacoa, or "Good Land," and returned to London filled with enthusiasm, and gave glowing accounts of the land and of its inhabitants. It was then that the name Virginia, or "Virgin Land," was bestowed upon the region they had visited, and for a long time this was the only designation by which America was known.

**Lane's Colony.**—In 1585, the year after the expedition under Amidas and Barlow, Raleigh sent out another, with a view of making a permanent settlement, under Ralph Lane, who was afterwards knighted by Queen Elizabeth,

as governor. Sir Richard Grenville, a brave sea captain, was placed in charge of the fleet, and landed the colony on Roanoke Island, in Albemarle Sound, on the North Carolina coast. Grenville did not remain long, but, leaving the settlement in the charge of Lane, he returned to England. There were no women with the party, and the men composing it set diligently to work to explore the mainland, and, like many who came after them, wasted much time in a vain search for gold. It was also generally believed that the western continent was very narrow, and they anxiously sought a way across it, in order to open up a new route to China and the East.

**Search for the South Sea.**—The Indians soon grew tired of their white visitors, and, being anxious to be rid of them, told Lane that the Roanoke River rose in the west so close to the sea-coast that its head-waters were salt; and he, believing the story, set out with most of his men to follow the stream to its source. Long before reaching it his provisions became exhausted, and only the courage of their leader stimulated his men to persevere. They had taken two dogs with them, and finally were reduced to eating these, boiling the flesh with sasparas leaves to season it. This was the last food obtainable, and when it was exhausted they were forced to turn their faces homeward. They reached Roanoke Island just in time to prevent the Indians from murdering the rest of their comrades.

**Sir Francis Drake—Abandonment of the Colony.**—About this time Sir Francis Drake, one of the most daring seamen of his day, who had returned from his voyage around the world only a few years before, came over from the West Indies to see how the colony fared. He found the colonists much disheartened, and furnished them with provisions and one or more ships to enable them to extend their discoveries, or, if necessary, to return to England. While he was still with them a violent storm arose, wrecked some of his ships and carried others out to sea. When the storm was over Drake devised plans for con-



tinuing the colony and for further discoveries; but the colonists, worn out and discouraged by their hardships, decided not to let escape them what might be a last opportunity of returning to England, and, embarking in one of Drake's vessels, they sailed for home with him. A few days after their departure a ship sent by Raleigh, laden with all the stores needed, arrived, but finding the settlement deserted, returned to England. About a fortnight later Sir Richard Grenville arrived with three well furnished ships, and, unwilling to lose possession, left fifteen men on the island to guard the rights of England.

**Tobacco.**—Sir Ralph Lane and his comrades were the first to introduce tobacco into England. They learned to smoke it from the Indians; and it is said some of the first pipes used in England were made of walnut shells, with straws for stems.

**Anecdote of Raleigh.**—Sir Walter Raleigh adopted the practice, and many men and women of fashion followed his example. It is said that his servant, coming suddenly into the room where he was smoking one day, thought that he was on fire, and emptied a pitcher of ale over his head in an effort to extinguish the flames.

**Second Settlement at Roanoke.**—In 1587 Raleigh made another attempt to found a permanent settlement on Roanoke Island. This time he sent women and children as well as men, and they reached their destination in safety. They found the tenements deserted, the fort in ruins, the wild deer feeding on the rank vegetation of the gardens, while human bones scattered in the fields told that the men left by Grenville had fallen by the arrows and tomahawks of the Indians.

**Virginia Dare.**—The colony was in charge of John White, and soon after landing a female child was born, to whom was given the name of Virginia Dare. She was the first child of English parents born in America, and was a granddaughter of Governor White.

**Disappearance of the Colony.**—Soon after her birth her grandfather went to England for supplies for his people,

but when he arrived there he found that country threatened by a Spanish invasion. Ships sent by Raleigh with supplies were captured or driven back, and when he returned, after an absence of three years, no trace of the colony could be found, except the word CROATAN carved on a tree. He had left behind him eighty-nine men, sev-



RUINS AT ROANOKE.

enteen women and eleven children, and not one of them was ever seen again. Their fate continues a mystery to this day. It was said that some of them afterwards found shelter among the Indians on the coast of North Carolina. This was never verified, and their story remains one of the saddest of the many tragedies of our history.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What countries are called the Old World?
2. How was the New World discovered?
3. What was the effect of the discovery?
4. What nations were most active?
5. Tell of John Cabot and his discoveries.
6. Who established fisheries?

7. Where ?
8. What country claimed a large portion of North America ?
9. Why ?
10. Who was Queen Elizabeth ?
11. Tell of her character and government.
12. What was she called ?
13. Why was Virginia so named ?
14. What nations had made most progress in establishing colonies ?
15. Who was Sir Walter Raleigh ?
16. Tell of his first meeting with the queen
17. Who was Sir Humphrey Gilbert ?
18. Tell of his voyage and fate.
19. How did this affect Raleigh ?
20. Whom did he send out, and when ?
21. Where did they go and what report did they make ?
22. When and by whom was a colony landed on Roanoke Island ?
23. Who was in charge of the settlement ?
24. What did they set out to search for ?
25. Tell the result.
26. Who paid a visit to the colony, and what was the consequence ?
27. Who introduced tobacco into England ?
28. What anecdote is told of Raleigh ?
29. When did Raleigh make another effort at settlement, and with what result ?

## CHAPTER II.

THE FATE OF RALEIGH—THE VIRGINIA COMPANY—THE FIRST CHARTER—EXPEDITION UNDER NEWPORT—SETTLEMENT AT JAMESTOWN—CAPT. JOHN SMITH.

**Colonization Abandoned.**—After the sad disappearance of little Virginia Dare and her kinsfolk and friends, many years passed before another attempt was made to settle Virginia. Sir Walter Raleigh having fruitlessly expended £40,000, a large sum in those days, was too poor to fit out any more ships, and Queen Elizabeth was too busy with a war with Spain, then the richest and most powerful country in the world, to pay any attention to the matter.

**Fate of Raleigh.**—The favor of princes is proverbially fickle, and, though Sir Walter fought with great bravery and distinction in this war, he was afterward so unfortunate as to incur the displeasure of the queen and her successor, King James, and was thrown into prison, where he remained twelve years before he was released. The rest of his life is a sad record of disappointments and misfortunes which fell so heavily upon him that he never again was able to accomplish anything in the way of colonizing Virginia, although he made more than one effort to learn something of the fate of his Roanoke settlers, but in vain. But he never lost faith in the future of the colony, and while a prisoner in the Tower said to Gosnold, "*I shall yet live to see Virginia a great nation.*" In 1618 King James I., to please the King of Spain, ordered him to be beheaded, and he was executed in the Tower. When he ascended the scaffold he felt the edge of the axe, and said: "This is a sharp medicine, but it is a sure cure for all diseases."

**Death of Elizabeth.**—In 1603 Queen Elizabeth died, and her cousin, James VI., of Scotland, became King James I., of England.

**The Virginia Company.**—While Raleigh was a prisoner in the Tower of London, some of the men who had been associated with him in his former enterprises organized themselves into a Virginia Company. Among those especially interested in the project were Bartholomew Gosnold, a brave sea captain who had formerly made an unsuccessful attempt to colonize New England. Associated with him were Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers and several other well known gentlemen, among them Captain John Smith, an English soldier.

**The First Charter.**—King James gave the enterprise his endorsement and drew up a charter for the government of the colony. This was the first charter granted in America, and by its terms two colonies were to be established in Virginia, a northern and a southern. The boundaries of the southern colony were to extend four hundred miles along the coast, half that distance north of the mouth of James River, and the same distance south, and to extend inland from sea to sea. The chief authority in the government of the colony was the King of England. The king himself appointed a council of thirteen in London who were to control and direct its affairs. There was also to be a Virginia council to act under the London Company.

**Its Provisions.**—The terms of the charter were in the main wise. The right of trial by jury was guaranteed the colonies, and efforts were to be made to Christianize the Indians; but what you should chiefly note is the evident determination of the king to control and dictate the policy of the colony in all respects. His endorsement and approval limited its every action.

**Character of King James I.**—James was neither a wise nor a liberal monarch, and he was prepared to enforce his authority on his subjects at home and abroad with all the strength of his narrow and bigoted nature. It was this same course which, persevered in by his successors, at last brought about the war of the Revolution. The Virginians were loyal and devoted to the crown of Eng-

land until its oppressions and tyrannies became unbearable, and finally drove them to revolt.

**The First Colonists.**—On the 19th of December, 1606, three vessels, the *Susan Constant*, the *God Speed*, and the *Discovery*, under the control of the Virginia Company, and commanded by Captain Christopher Newport, set sail for America. The first of the three bore the little company which was to found the earliest permanent English settlement in the territory now known as the United States. The ships were very small, the largest being only one hundred tons burden and the smallest scarcely twenty. It was six weeks, owing to storms and contrary winds, ere they lost sight of the coast of England, and it was nearly four months before they landed in America.

**A Long Voyage.**—The sailors of that day were very ignorant and timid, and not many were brave enough to put to sea and sail directly across the Atlantic by a new and unknown route. They usually beat their way southward to the Canary Islands and thence to the West Indies, thus making their journey doubly long. April had come before they sighted the longed for shores and refreshed their weary eyes with the verdure and beauty of a Virginia landscape in the spring-time.

**Driven Into the Chesapeake.**—They had at first intended to settle upon that ill-fated Roanoke Island where their predecessors had perished, but a sudden storm arose and their frail vessels, helpless before it, were driven into Chesapeake Bay, and to the headlands at its entrance they gave the names of the king's sons, calling them Cape Charles and Cape Henry. They discovered the mouth of a large river which they named in honor of King James, and the headland at its mouth they called Point Comfort, because it afforded a safe anchorage. Up this they sailed in search of a landing.

**Landing at Jamestown.**—On the 13th of May, 1607, they landed on a peninsula, about forty miles up the river. It is said they were influenced in their choice of this spot by the fact that the water was six fathoms deep and they could

fasten their vessels to the trees on shore ; but, whatever the reason may have been, the selection was most unfortunate, for the spot though beautiful with forest trees, wild grapevines and blossoming shrubs and flowers, was low and unhealthy, and much of their subsequent suffering resulted from this cause.

**The First Church.**—Their first act on landing was to arrange for a place of worship. They stretched a sail from the boughs of two adjacent trees and made a sort of pulpit under it. Here they had religious services morning and evening. They felled trees and built themselves houses, and having named their settlement Jamestown, set to work to make themselves as comfortable as circumstances would permit.

**Their Dangers.**—There were two especial dangers which threatened the safety and prosperity of the colonists. One was the hostility of the Indians and the other was their own unfitness for the situation in which they found themselves.

**Character of the Colonists.**—In their ranks were men from every walk in life. There were knights and gentlemen, who thought that labor of any kind was a disgrace, and there were industrious craftsmen who desired to do their duty if they were properly directed. Some had come in search of treasure, some to convert the Indians, and some to conquer new territory for the king ; but all were unskilled in the work necessary to be done, and unprepared for the hardships to be endured. Industry, self-control, and consideration for the rights of others are virtues we should all strive to acquire and practice. These were lessons our colonists had yet to learn. But their greatest need was a competent leader, a man whom they could trust and respect, and him in time they found in Captain John Smith.

**Captain John Smith.**—Smith's career, like that of many another English soldier of that day, had been full of adventure. He was born in Lincolnshire, England, in 1580, was the son of a wealthy gentleman, and had received



CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.



a good education. Being left an orphan at the age of fifteen, he was apprenticed to a merchant by his guardian, but becoming dissatisfied he ran away, and for two years his life was a series of romantic adventures in Europe, Asia, and Africa, where he fought under more than one flag and experienced both good and evil fortune. Among others to whom he offered his sword was Sigismund, Duke of Transylvania, then engaged in a fierce conflict with the Turks. After the fashion of the day, Smith dared his adversaries to single combat, and slew three Turkish soldiers who successively came out to break a lance with him. For this feat of valor he was knighted by Sigismund, who bestowed on him a crest bearing three Turks' heads.

**His Imprisonment and Escape.**—But his fortunes changed, and he was finally taken prisoner by his enemies, who put an iron collar about his neck and kept him at hard labor for many months. With characteristic daring he at length made his escape, and after many hardships reached England, where the wonders and riches of the New World were the all-absorbing topic of the day.

**Joins the Virginia Company.**—Smith entered into the project of establishing settlements in Virginia with enthusiasm, and, as we have seen, was among the first colonists to sail thither. He was now twenty-five years old, a soldier of fortune, eager for new fields of enterprise and glory. The Virginia Company promised both, and he promptly enrolled himself among its members.

**His Character.**—But John Smith was not merely a soldier and a fighter. He was also a writer of force and power, and a born leader of men. With his undaunted courage he combined an earnest purpose and a ready wit, which stood him in good stead in many personal dangers, and the best faculties of his mind and heart were to be devoted to the service of his comrades, among whom he soon took prominence as a leader. He had received no official appointment as such. Indeed, the colonists them-

selves did not know who would be their governor until after their voyage was ended.

**The Virginia Council.**—The names of the Virginia Council were, by the king's orders, sealed up in a box, which was not to be opened until their destination was reached. The box was opened on April 26th, and the names were found to be those of Captains Gosnold and Newport, Wingfield, Smith, Ratcliffe, Martin and Kendall.

**Wingfield Made President.**—These seven were to elect one of their number an annual president, and on May 13th Wingfield was chosen to fill that office. A most unwise selection it proved to be. Wingfield was utterly unfit for the position to which he was called. He was indolent, selfish, and cowardly, and envious of Smith, whose ability he could not fail to recognize.

**Smith's Energy.**—The latter was not a man to sit idly by when there was so much to be done, and before long took the lead as the master spirit of the enterprise. But for his courage and devotion the little band might have gone the way of that other on Roanoke Island, whose fate remains a mystery for all time.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Why did not Raleigh send out more colonists?
2. What was his fate?
3. Who succeeded Elizabeth?
4. Name some of the members of the Virginia Company.
5. Who drew up its charter and what were its terms?
6. What was the character of King James?
7. How many vessels were sent and under whose command?
8. When?
9. By what route did they sail?
10. When did they come in sight of Virginia?
11. Where and why?
12. Where and when did they land?
13. What was their first care?
14. What special dangers threatened them?
15. Of what classes were the colonists composed?
16. What was their greatest need?
17. Tell about Captain John Smith.
18. What was his character?
19. Who composed the first Council?
20. Who was chosen president and what were his qualifications?
21. What is said of Smith?

## CHAPTER III.

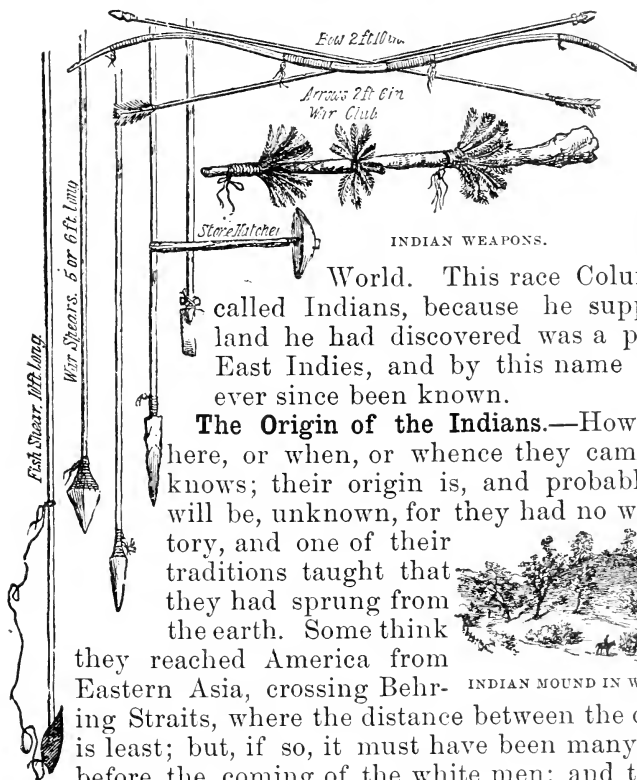
## THE INDIANS.

**The Indians.**—The settlers at Jamestown, as did those at Roanoke and elsewhere in the New World, found the country inhabited by a race very different from any of the people of the Old

World. This race Columbus had called Indians, because he supposed the land he had discovered was a part of the East Indies, and by this name they have ever since been known.

**The Origin of the Indians.**—How they got here, or when, or whence they came, nobody knows; their origin is, and probably forever will be, unknown, for they had no written history, and one of their traditions taught that they had sprung from the earth. Some think

they reached America from Eastern Asia, crossing Behring Straits, where the distance between the continents is least; but, if so, it must have been many centuries before the coming of the white men; and the Indian mounds found in many parts of the country, out of which have been dug pottery, bricks, and many articles of



INDIAN WEAPONS.

INDIAN MOUND IN WEST VIRGINIA.

household use unknown to the Indians, show that a race far more advanced in the arts of civilized life had occupied this country before them.

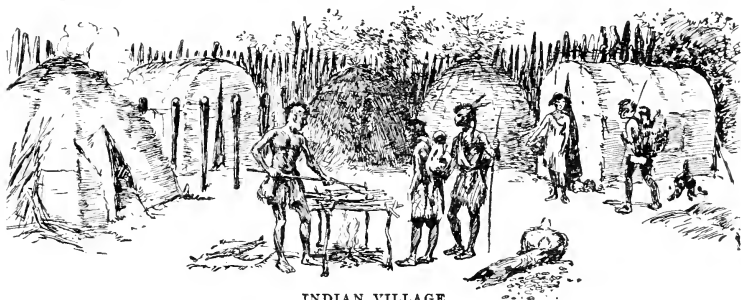
**The Virginia Indians.**—The Indians found in Virginia by the English belonged to the Algonquin family, one of the three great families which occupied the vast country south of the Great Lakes and east of the Mississippi River; the others being the Iroquois, on the north, near the Great Lakes, whom the English called the Five Nations (and afterwards, when joined by the Tuscaroras from North Carolina, the Six Nations), and the Mobilians or Maskokis, near the Gulf of Mexico and on the lower Mississippi. These were scattered over the country at wide intervals and were not very numerous, it being now thought that the number east of the Mississippi did not exceed 200,000.

**Their Subdivisions.**—These families were composed of clans, every member of which was related by blood as the descendants of some common ancestress, for the Indians traced descent from the mother, and not from the father, as we do. These clans formed tribes, over which was a ruler called a "Sachem," chief or king, who owed his rank sometimes to his birth, sometimes to his superior cunning and bravery, and who was their leader in war and presided over their councils. Each clan was known by its badge or "totem," usually the picture of some animal, as a bear, wolf, beaver, or eagle, which they used as a seal to their agreements, and also sometimes carved on their tombstones, and whose spirit was thought to watch over and protect them.

**Their Appearance and Dress.**—While they differed in some respects from each other they were so much alike that they are believed to have sprung from the same stock. They were of a reddish copper color, tall, straight, and well formed, with straight, coarse, black hair, somewhat like a horse's mane, high cheek bones, prominent noses, and small, deep-set, black eyes. The women wore their hair long and hanging down over their shoulders,

but the hair of the men was cut very close on one side and allowed to grow long on the other, and brought up in a single lock on the top of the head, called the "scalp lock." This was a token of defiance or dare to their enemies, affording a good hand-hold in a hand-to-hand fight, and enabled them to tear off the scalp as a trophy of victory from the foe when slain. In summer both sexes went almost naked, and in winter clothed themselves in the skins of the large animals they had killed in hunting. On great occasions the men wore head-dresses of feathers and the claws and sometimes the heads of wild beasts and strings of shells as ornaments, and the women wore dyed feathers and shells strung as beads. They made soft shoes, called "moccasins," of buckskin, and leggins of the same material, which they sometimes ornamented with beads or shells.

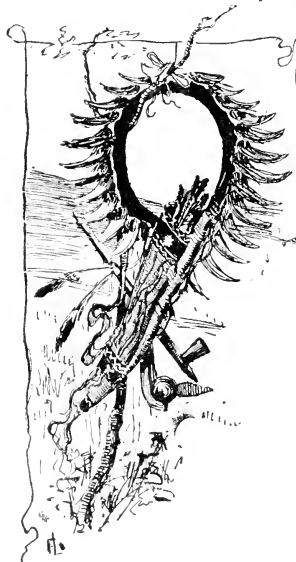
**How They Lived.**—They lived in huts which they called "wigwams," made of poles driven into the ground in a



INDIAN VILLAGE.

circle, drawn together at the top and fastened with withes or strips of bark, which they covered very skillfully with bark or skins, and some of the Virginia Indians built long houses like the Iroquois. In the middle of the wigwam they dug a hole for a fire, the smoke escaping through an opening in the top. Their food consisted of the animals killed in hunting, fish from the rivers and streams, which they took with hooks made of bone, speared with long spears, or caught in weirs or traps, and the wild fruits and

nuts which grew in the woods. They raised Indian corn or maize, pumpkins, beans and tobacco in small quantities on lands cleared by killing the trees. This was done by belting them or by building fires around them and burning them until they were deadened, or by burning them down. The soil was worked with sharp sticks or shells or rude hoes made of sharpened stones fastened to a stick. They cooked their meat by broiling it on the fire, or boiling it in wooden vessels in which the water was heated by dropping in red-hot stones or in earthen vessels over the fire, and made bread of corn, pounded in



INDIAN QUIVER, ARROWS, CLUB  
AND PIPE.

wooden mortars made by burning out pieces of wood and scraping away the burned portions; this they baked in the hot ashes. Their canoes were made from logs hollowed out by burning and scraping. They had no domestic animals, not even the dog. The labor was all performed by the women or squaws, who built the wigwams, cultivated the crops, gathered the wood, prepared the food, dressed the skins and converted them into garments, and when they moved, as they often did, carried all the household goods on their shoulders or in their hands, and also the babies or *papposes* who were too small to walk. The Indian brave or warrior thought it beneath his

dignity to do anything except prepare his weapons for hunting or for war, and spent his time hunting in the forest or on the warpath, fighting and scalping his enemies. They painted or tattooed themselves with clay of different colors, and from the color of the paint it was known whether they meant peace or war.

**Their Characteristics.**—Living almost exclusively in the

open air, they were active, strong and swift ; able to endure prolonged hunger and fatigue ; Indian runners sometimes travelled seventy-five miles a day. They were sometimes kind and true to their friends, but were habitually deceitful, treacherous and cruel towards their enemies; sometimes remembering a favor, but never forgetting an injury. They were trained to self-control, and seldom showed any emotion, either of pleasure or of pain, but endured the latter without flinching. They used few words, but nothing escaped their notice, and their eyes and ears were so trained that they could follow the trail of a deer or of an enemy through the pathless forests by the turning of the dry leaves or the twisting of a bough, distinguish the footstep of man or beast, friend or foe, and could also imitate the calls of birds and animals so as to bring them within range of their bows.

**Their Weapons.**—They were armed with clubs, spears and tomahawks, which they used in war, and bows and arrows, used chiefly in hunting. Their arrows had sharp-pointed heads of flint-stone, or sometimes of bone, but it was not long after the Europeans came before the greed of the traders, notwithstanding the enactment of laws prohibiting the sale of fire-arms to the natives, supplied them with guns, which they learned to use with great skill. Their mode of warfare was to steal secretly through the woods, one behind the other, in what is yet called Indian file, and surprise the villages and camps of their enemy by night, killing men, women and children without mercy; or they lay in wait and surprised their enemies on the march.

**Their Education.**—The boys and girls were taught to weave mats, string shells, dress skins, make bows and arrows, and the boys to use the bow and to spear fish, and were trained to bear hunger and fatigue, endure pain without a murmur, and to do



INDIAN  
RELICS.\*

\*Indian idol and stone pipe in Virginia Historical Society collection.

such things as required skill and courage. One of their reputed games was to stand up in a row, put live coals under their naked arms and press them close to their bodies. The one that could stand the pain the longest was made their leader.

**Their Religion.**—The Indians believed in the existence of a great and good Spirit, which they called “Manitou,” but they believed, also, in a number of evil spirits, which they tried not to offend, because they feared the evil spirits would do them some injury. The Indian also believed that if he had been a brave warrior and taken many scalps, when he died his spirit would go to the happy hunting-grounds, but the coward would be doomed to endless drudgery and flogging. When he died his weapons were buried with him for use in the other world. After 1619 many efforts were made to Christianize and civilize them, but with little success.

**Their Fate.**—The Indians have now almost entirely disappeared from all the country they once inhabited in the East before the advance of the white man, having been removed to what are called Indian reservations, west of the Mississippi.

**The Powhatan Confederacy.**—The tribes over which Powhatan ruled were scattered over a territory embracing about 8,000 square miles, and could bring into the field about 2,500 warriors. The total population of the Powhatan confederacy did not, perhaps, exceed 10,000, including men, women and children. Of these but a remnant of the once powerful Pamunkeys, once the foes, but afterwards the allies of the English, now remains, and none of these are full-blooded Indians. They number about one hundred, and live at Indiantown, the Indian reservation on the Pamunkey, about twenty miles east of Richmond, opposite the White House. Their government is Democratic, the authority being vested in an elective chief and a council of four members, who punish offences and settle disputes among them. Their chief visits the capital every fall to bring to the governor of



Virginia their yearly tribute of fish and game, which from colonial times has been paid by the tribe in acknowledgment of its subordination to the authority of the State. They pay no taxes to the State, and do not enjoy the right of suffrage.

**The Wrongs of the Indian.**—A great deal of sentimental talk has been expended upon the “noble red man” and his wrongs at our hands by those who have obtained their ideas of Indian character from Cooper’s novels. But those most familiar with the North American Indian give him credit for very few of the virtues of humanity. Smith and the Virginia colonists did everything they could to win the good-will and friendship of the natives. They were repaid by treachery and murder, and several massacres of the trusting colonists were the outcome of all of the friendly efforts our ancestors made.

**Pocahontas and Tecumseh.**—Pocahontas, alone, stands out upon history as a pure and generous woman, the equal of any historical character of her time. Amongst the chiefs of his race, Tecumseh is a noble example of high character and great ability. When he reached the field of battle and found his Indians, the allies of the British, murdering and scalping the helpless prisoners, men, women and children, as the English officers in command permitted or ordered them to do, with his own hand Tecumseh slew the perpetrators and stopped their brutality. We can recall no other good Indians save Pocahontas and Tecumseh.



TECUMSEH.

**The Character of the Indian.**—Beyond all others, even upon Virginia’s soil, the Indian character is the worst. Vindictive and treacherous, and foul in their habits and their nature, they seem to merit the grim criticism of the Federal general who won promotion from Mr. Lincoln for desolating the Valley of Virginia, “so that no crow could fly over it without carrying his rations,” and whose

criticism was summed up in his decision: "There is no good Indian save a dead Indian," and who, coming upon a camp of Indians ill of small-pox, massacred all of them. The habits of the Indians are foul; they eat dogs and other filthy food, and on occasion are cannibals.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Who inhabited Virginia at the time of the first settlement, and why were they so called?
2. Tell what you know of their origin.
3. What three families of Indians dwelt between the Great Lakes, the Atlantic coast, the Gulf of Mexico and the Mississippi River?
4. To which of these did the Virginia Indians belong?
5. How were these families divided?
6. Describe the appearance and dress of the Indians.
7. Tell of their houses; of their agriculture.
8. Mention some of their characteristics.
9. Tell of their weapons and mode of warfare.
10. Of their education.
11. Of their religion.
12. Of their fate.
13. What can you tell of the Powhatan Confederacy?
14. What is said of the wrongs of the Indian?
15. What is said of Pocahontas and Tecumseh?
16. What is the character of the Indian?

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

---

1492—1607.

---

## CHAPTER I.—Discovery by Columbus.

Its Effect.

Spanish and Portuguese voyages.

John Cabot.

English Claim.

First Voyage Around the World.

Second Voyage Around the World.

Queen Elizabeth.

Sir Walter Raleigh.

Sir Humphrey Gilbert.

Raleigh's First Expedition.

Raleigh's First Colony.

Introduction of Tobacco.

Raleigh's Second Colony.

Virginia Dare.

## CHAPTER II.—Fate of Raleigh.

James I

The Virginia Company.

The First Charter.

The First Colonists.

The Voyage.

The Settlement.

Character of the Colonists.

Captain John Smith—His adventures; his character; his efforts.

The Council—Its members; its president.

INDIANS:

## CHAPTER III.—Their Origin.

The Virginia Indians.

Their Subdivisions—Clans, tribes.

Their Appearance and Dress.

Their Dwellings.

Their Implements.

The Women.

The Warriors.

Their Traits.

Weapons.

Education.

Religion.

Fate

Powhatan's Confederacy.

The Wrongs of the Indian.

Pocahontas.

Tecumseh.

Their character.

## CHAPTER IV.

THE COLONY—HOSTILITY OF THE INDIANS—SICKNESS—THE GOLD FEVER—  
SMITH'S EXPLORATIONS—HIS CAPTURE AND RESCUE BY POCAHONTAS.

**Number of Colonists.**—About one hundred men composed the Jamestown colony. We are told that when the expedition sailed it numbered one hundred and forty emigrants and forty sailors.

**Preparations for Winter.**—There was much to be done before such a number was prepared to face the cold and hardships of the winter, and as soon as adequate shelter had been provided the ground was cleared and corn planted. The forests abounded in game and the waters in fish, and the colonists had reason to feel that their new life was happily and satisfactorily begun.

**Hostility of the Indians.**—They had, however, received a warning that they were not to be permitted to have peaceful possession of the country. Soon after landing a voyage of exploration was made up the James to the village of Powhatan, the great chief of that region, one of whose residences was near the falls of the river, not far from the present site of Richmond. The voyagers did not receive a very cordial welcome from him, and soon turned their faces homeward to find that trouble had already begun there. The Indians had attacked the settlers, killing one man and wounding others, but were finally routed by turning on them the cannon on board the ships. These cannon were loaded with a curious missile in the shape of a cross, which cut the limbs and branches from the trees as it passed through them; this greatly alarmed the natives, and caused them to withdraw.

**Measures for Defence.**—After this experience greater precautions were taken by the colonists to guard against surprise. A palisade was built and sentinels were regu-

larly posted. Finally Powhatan made overtures for peace, and their prospects seeming brighter, Captain Newport sailed for England for fresh supplies, leaving a small vessel for the use of the colony in his absence.

**A New Danger.**—But a new danger now threatened them. The spot they had selected as a place of residence was most unhealthy. The hot suns of the summer and the malarial atmosphere of the swamps and marshes about them soon bred sickness.



ATTACKED BY THE INDIANS.

**The Mortality.**—Fevers broke out among them, and weakened from insufficient food and want of proper nursing, many died of disease and of the exhaustion of hunger. It is said that out of about one hundred living in Jamestown in June, 1607, sixty-seven were dead by the following January. Had the Indians chosen to attack them then they would have fallen an easy prey to the arrow and the tomahawk.

**Wingfield's Incapacity.**—But the greatest evil which threatened them arose from the incapacity of the Governor and his friends. Their sole object in coming to Virginia seems to have been to acquire a share in whatever profits might accrue from the enterprise. Disappointed in this they had but one intention and aim—to live in all the ease and comfort possible, under the circumstances, and to desert at the first opportunity.

**His Attempt to Desert.**—Before the summer was over Gosnold died of the fever, and Wingfield and Kendall made an effort to steal the vessel Newport had left and escape to England. They were intercepted, and their

comrades, indignant at their cowardice and treachery, deposed the one and tried and executed the other.

**Smith Procures Food.**—All eyes were now turned to Smith as the one man who might save them in their great peril. Much of their suffering was the result of their own folly, but their Heavenly Father, to whom they prayed each night and morning, did not desert them. The Indians, pitying their misfortunes, brought them some grain, and Smith set out to look for more. Finding his friendly overtures and requests rejected, he forced the Indians to give him what he needed for his starving comrades.

**Returning Prosperity.**—And so the terrible summer of 1607 dragged itself slowly to a close and with the frosts of autumn the fever abated, and the sick and exhausted colonists gained new health and strength. They were able to gather their crops and were relieved from the dread of starvation and disease.

**The Fire of 1608.**—The winter was passed in safety, but towards the spring a conflagration broke out which quickly destroyed the frail cabins of the settlers. They were, however, soon replaced, and the colonists quietly pursued their various occupations and we might hope had learned wisdom from the sad experiences of the summer, but such lessons are soon forgotten.

**The Gold Fever.**—The discovery of some yellow dirt near Jamestown awakened the old thirst for gold which had lain dormant during the cruel vicissitudes of the past year. Every interest was neglected, and from morning till night they did nothing but work for the treasure they believed they had found. Smith alone refused to have any confidence in the value of the discovery, and urged his comrades not to waste their time and their hopes upon so foolish a venture. But they refused to listen to him, and were only convinced when a shipload of the stuff had been sent to England and pronounced worthless.

**Wild Turkeys and Potatoes.**—At the same time a dozen or more wild turkeys were carried to England, the first ever seen there. Sir Walter Raleigh had likewise intro-

duced the potato, which had been found growing in the West Indies, by the Spaniards, into Ireland, where it grew and flourished so that its birthplace was forgotten and it was named for the land of its adoption.

**Smith Ascends the Chickahominy.**—In December, 1607, Smith set out with a party in an open boat to explore the Chickahominy and also to procure corn for the colony. When he had journeyed some distance up the stream the boat, with most of the men in it, was left with instructions to keep in mid stream, and Smith, in a canoe with two companions, Robinson and Emery, pursued his way further up the river. As soon as he had left, the men in the barge disobeyed his order and landed. It chanced that Opecancanough, Powhatan's wily and treacherous brother, was hunting with a large band of warriors in the neighborhood, and came suddenly upon them, capturing one of them, George Cassein, the rest barely escaping with their lives. He forced Cassein to tell him whither Smith had gone and immediately sent a party in pursuit of him.

**Capture of Smith.**—Smith, meanwhile, ignorant of what had passed, had gone ashore in search of food for his companions. The Indians surprised Robinson and Emery while they were asleep beside their fire and killing them both, hurried on after Smith. They overtook him, and a sharp encounter followed. He captured one of his enemies, and holding his body before him as a shield, kept them for a time at bay. But, unfortunately, he stumbled into a bog, where, sinking up to his waist in the slime and mud, he was at last forced to surrender.

**His Coolness.**—He gained the good-will of his captors by showing them his pocket-compass and explaining to them its use, and was conducted in safety to Opecancanough, who was greatly delighted at having secured so distinguished a captive.

**Carried from Town to Town.**—Smith was carried around in a sort of triumphal procession and exhibited to all the neighboring tribes between the James and the Potomac, suffering meanwhile no violence at the hands of his cap-

tors. On the contrary, they treated him with consideration, hospitably urging him to eat much and often. But, suspicious of their intentions and ignorant of their customs, he became apprehensive lest they wished to fatten him in order that he might serve as the chief dish at some future feast, and so hoping to postpone the evil day, he refrained from food as far as possible.

**Condemned to Death.**—At last he was conducted to Powhatan, then residing at Werowocomico, in the present county of Gloucester, where a council was held to determine his fate. The deliberations were long and earnest, but it was finally decided that he was too dangerous a foe to set at liberty, and preparations were made for his execution. A large stone was selected to serve as a block, and his brains were to be dashed out on it with a club. He was dragged to the spot, bound, and his head placed upon the stone, while a powerful Indian lifted his club to strike the fatal blow. Just at this instant Powhatan's young daughter, Pocahontas, rushed forward, and throwing herself between the executioner and his victim,

prayed her father to spare Smith's life. Powhatan was tenderly attached to this child, and finally granted what she asked. Smith was reprieved, and after being kept in captivity a few days longer was permitted to return to Jamestown.



**The Friendship of Pocahontas.**—This incident was the beginning of the friendship between Pocahontas and the colonists—a friendship which was to prove of inestimable value to the latter.

Many times when starvation threatened them Pocahontas brought them food, and more than once warned them of danger from her own people.

**Truth of the Story.**—Some do not believe this narrative of the rescue of Smith by Pocahontas, one of the most picturesque incidents which brightens the otherwise



dull pages of history ; but Smith himself says she saved his life at the risk of her own, and there is no reason to doubt the truth of his statement. Her attachment to Smith and friendship for the English would be wholly inexplicable unless viewed in the light of this incident. The scene is worthy of the artist's pencil, and has been frequently pictured. The throng of gaudily painted,



RESCUE OF SMITH.

naked savages crowding about the stalwart soldier, who is being hurried to his death ; the slender figure of the Indian girl, periling her own life to save his, and around them on every side the smiling Virginia landscape in all its original beauty. Doubtless the loyal and honest gentleman who strove to do his duty to his fellow-man, and who has recorded his faith in the providence of God, lifted his heart in a last appeal for succor in his hour of need, and received it when all seemed lost.

## QUESTIONS.

1. What was the number of the colonists?
2. What was the work before them?
3. What warning did they have?
4. What measures were taken for defence?
5. What new dangers threatened them?
6. How many died?
7. Tell about Wingfield and his attempt to desert.
8. Who took charge of the colony?
9. How was food obtained?
10. When did the sickness abate?
11. What disaster befell them in the Spring?
12. What put an end to all profitable work in the colony for a time?
13. What common domestic fowl is a native of America?
14. What vegetable had Sir Walter Raleigh introduced into Ireland?
15. Where had it been found?
16. Tell of Smith's trip up the Chickahominy and of his capture.
17. What was done with him?
18. Before whom was he at last carried?
19. Tell of the preparations for his execution and of his rescue.
20. How did this incident affect the colonists?

## CHAPTER V.

SMITH EXPLORES CHESAPEAKE BAY—AN ADDITION TO THE COLONY—CORONATION OF POWHATAN—SCARCITY OF CORN—SMITH'S VISIT TO POWHATAN AND OPECANCANOUGH—LORD DELAWARE.

**Exploring the Chesapeake.**—In the summer of 1608 Smith, with fourteen companions, undertook an extended exploration of the waters of Chesapeake Bay and the adjacent country. The king had expressly ordered that



SMITH EXPLORING THE CHESAPEAKE.

efforts to find a short route to Asia should be made, and Smith, like many others, believed it might be accomplished by following some of the water courses which fell into Chesapeake Bay.

**Smith's Perils and Courage.**—He and his party were gone three months, and experienced numberless adven-

tures the while. They suffered many privations and perils, and would have soon become discouraged and given up the attempt but for the influence and example of their leader. His courage and cheerfulness never forsook him. He made friends of the natives wherever it was possible to do so, but when they refused him the assistance desired, he forced them to provide the food necessary for the lives of his party. He protected his boat from their arrows by placing shields and mats of reeds along its sides, and his vigilance and watchfulness never slept. Each night and morning the little party prayed a prayer and chanted a psalm, and so toiling and praying made their way home after traversing nearly three thousand miles.

**Ratcliffe's Incapacity.**—They reached Jamestown to find the colony worn out with the folly and incapacity of Ratcliffe, who had been left in charge of it. A sentence of death would probably have been passed upon him but for the efforts made in his behalf by Smith, who was now elected President.

**Smith's Message to Hudson.**—It is said that after this voyage Smith sent a map of the regions he had explored to his friend Henry Hudson, in London, and advised him to seek for the road to China, to the northward of Chesapeake Bay. Hudson followed his advice, and discovered the river and bay which bear his name

**Newport's Return.**—Late in the autumn Newport arrived, bringing about seventy new settlers, (two of whom, Mrs. Forrest and her maid, Anne Burruss, were women) and fresh supplies. He also brought a crown for King Powhatan, with orders from the London Council that it should be placed upon the head of the Indian chief, and a message was sent to that potentate requesting him to come to Jamestown and receive his decoration. This he promptly refused to do, saying, "This is my country, and I am as great a king as your own. If you wish to see me, come to my home."

**Visit to Powhatan.**—So, as the king declined to come

for his crown, it was decided to take the crown to the king, and Smith and Newport set out with a party for Werowocomico for that purpose. With the crown they carried also a bed, a basin and pitcher, and a scarlet cloak for his royal use. They reached the neighborhood of the village about nightfall, and, building a fire, decided to wait until next day to deliver their gifts.

**Entertained by Pocahontas.**—While they were gathered about the blaze, resting after their day's march, they heard the sound of music and saw coming towards them a band of Indian girls led by Pocahontas. They danced about the white men, and finally led them to a wigwam, where they were given supper and comfortable quarters for the night.

**Coronation of Powhatan.**—Powhatan was willing enough to accept the bed and the basin and pitcher. The scarlet cloak gave him much satisfaction, but when he was requested to kneel down that the crown might be placed on his head, he rebelled again and was with great difficulty induced to consent to assume the requisite position. However, the coronation being at length peacefully accomplished, he graciously collected his old moccasins and the blanket of skins which had formerly constituted his state costume, and, making them into a bundle, sent them to his brother, the King of England, for his own especial use.

**The Result.**—Unfortunately, the king's gifts did not have the effect expected upon the Virginia sovereign. Powhatan, who had never owned a bed or a basin and pitcher before, much less a scarlet cloak and a crown, now thought himself so important a personage that he became more aggressive and less obliging every day.

**Searching for Gold.**—Besides the gifts for Powhatan, Newport bore fresh orders for discovering the East Indian route and for bringing back to England the gold which the king and the London Council had decided could easily be found if the colonists would only look for it. Newport made a feeble and unsuccessful effort to fulfill

these commands himself, but failing, once more turned his face homeward, leaving Smith at the head of affairs.

**Condition of the Colony.**—Meanwhile, the winter was approaching and the question of food was pressing upon the colonists. They now numbered about two hundred men and it was no light task to provide food for so many. Powhatan, as has been said, was less inclined than ever to aid them and their future seemed unpromising enough. But they had at their head a man whose courage never faltered and who was prepared to fight to the death if necessary in their behalf. As the old writers tell us “the Spaniards did not more greedily desire gold than Captain Smith food.”

**Smith Visits Powhatan to Procure Corn.**—So once again he set out to visit Powhatan at his home on York River, and make a request for corn. On his way he was warned that he would meet with treachery, but he was doubtless already prepared for the worst, and was on his guard for every sign of peril.

**Warned by Pocahontas.**—The night after his arrival at the Indian village, Pocahontas secretly warned him again that great danger threatened the party, and all night they waited for an attack, which, however, never came. The next morning Powhatan finally consented to assist them and loaded some of their boats with the corn they so sorely needed.

**Treachery of Opecancanough.**—Before returning, Smith decided to go up the river to the village of his old acquaintance, Opecancanough, which stood at the junction of the Mattaponi and Pamunkey, where West Point now stands. He was conducted to the chief's presence, where he was cordially welcomed and readily promised all he desired. Suddenly his men, who were waiting without, shouted to him to beware, and Smith, glancing through the opening in the wigwam, saw that his party and himself were surrounded by armed savages.

**Smith's Presence of Mind.**—Without an instant's hesitation he caught his smiling host by his long hair, and,

putting a pistol to his head, commanded him to either give him the corn or prepare to die. Opecancanough, realizing that he had the worst of the situation, followed Powhatan's example and furnished the supplies demanded.

**Smith's Plans for the Future.**—So the winter passed in safety, and in the spring Smith set vigorously to work to raise enough grain to guard against a recurrence of the danger, but in the midst of his labors an interruption occurred which put an end to all his plans and deprived the colony of his services forever.

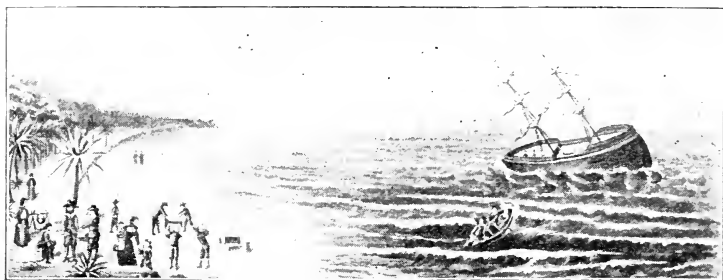
**His Enemies.**—While he had been devoting his best energies to the work before him, the men whom he had supplanted and displaced had not been idle. Ratcliffe and Newport were his bitter enemies and, when they returned to England, filled the ears of the London Council with falsehoods against him. He was charged with being unfaithful to his trust and disloyal to the company. It was said he oppressed the Indians and that he meant to marry Pocahontas and make himself king of Virginia.

**A New Charter.**—The result was that a change in the government of the colony was decided upon. The king made a new charter providing for a governor, lieutenant-governor and an admiral, who were to have unlimited authority in conducting affairs in Virginia. As for Smith, he was summarily ordered home.

**Lord Delaware.**—Lord Delaware was appointed governor with Sir George Somers and Sir Thomas Gates as his subordinates. With them was to go a fleet of nine vessels, carrying five hundred settlers of all ages, men, women and children. They set sail in May, 1609, with all the company, Lord Delaware excepted. He was to follow later.

**Wrecking of the Sea Venture.**—When within a few days' sail of their destination the fleet encountered a storm, which separated them, driving one of the vessels, the *Sea Venture*, which bore Newport, Sir Thomas Gates and Admiral Somers, together with more than a hundred of the company, helpless before it. At last the vessel struck

upon a rock and the terror-stricken voyagers thought the end had come, but in another moment the waves lifted her again and she finally grounded in safety. They had been landed upon one of the Bermuda Islands, and here for nearly a year they lived in security and comparative



WRECK OF THE SEA VENTURE.

comfort, striving all the while for means to reach their comrades in Virginia. A small ketch was lost. The seven other vessels reached Jamestown in safety.

### QUESTIONS.

1. What further explorations did Smith make and with what object?
2. How long were they gone and how far did they travel?
3. Who was in charge during Smith's absence and what was the state of the colony?
4. What message did Smith send to Hudson?
5. When did Newport return and what did he bring?
6. What were the names of the first women to settle in the colony?
7. What invitation was sent and to whom?
8. What the reply?
9. Tell of Smith and Newport's visit to Powhatan.
10. How were they entertained?
11. How were the presents received?
12. What return did he make?
13. What was the effect on Powhatan?
14. What other orders had Newport?
15. Of what were the colonists in need?
16. How did Smith procure it?
17. Tell of his adventure with Opecanough.
18. Who were Smith's enemies among the colonists?
19. What charges did they make against him?
20. Tell about the New Charter and what changes were made.
21. Who was appointed governor and who were his assistants?
22. Give account of their voyage over.



## CHAPTER VI.

THE SHIPWRECKED COLONISTS UPON BERMUDA—ARRIVAL IN VIRGINIA—SMITH DEPOSED—HIS ACCIDENT AND DEPARTURE—TROUBLES OF THE COLONY—"THE STARVING TIME"—JAMESTOWN DESERTED—ARRIVAL OF LORD DELAWARE.

**On the Bermudas.**—It is not often that castaways upon a desert island are as happily situated as were the passengers and crew of the *Sea Venture*. Their story reads like the history of Robinson Crusoe, and in industry and ingenuity they almost equalled that wonderful man.

**Religious Worship.**—Like the Jamestown settlers, their first thought was to thank God for their rescue and to prepare a place in which to worship and praise Him. Their church was under the green boughs of the forest trees, and the bell of the ship called them each morning and evening at the hour of prayer. There was a marriage among them, and children were born, one of them being the daughter of an English gentleman, John Rolfe, of whom we shall hear again. The climate was mild and fruits and vegetation were abundant and luxurious. They had saved the cargo of the ship, and altogether there was much to give them comfort and hope.

**Efforts to Reach Virginia.**—They never relaxed their efforts to communicate with their friends in Virginia, and one of the ship's boats set out to make its way thither. No trace of the boat and its crew was ever found, and it was probably lost in one of the sudden squalls so common in that region.

**Arrival at Jamestown.**—At length they succeeded in building from the wreck of their ship and timber cut on the island two small vessels, in which they embarked, and in May, 1610, after a fortnight at sea, reached Jamestown.

**State of the Colony.**—Meantime, many changes had come to pass there. Ratcliffe, with the remainder of the

fleet and its company, had arrived, and his first act was to notify Smith that he was deposed. The latter had already been warned of the intentions of the London Council, and received the news with characteristic courage. He had deserved better treatment at the hands of the company, but he was too much of a philosopher to expect it and too proud to court the favor of those who were to supplant him.

**Smith Prepares to Leave.**—So he made ready for his departure, announcing that he would go as soon as his properly and duly appointed successor arrived. One thing he refused absolutely to do, and that was to deliver up his authority to Ratcliffe. The latter, meanwhile, did all he could to foster a distrust of Smith among the newly-arrived emigrants, and encouraged them to insubordination of every sort.

**Smith's Accident.**—Smith did not falter in his duty because he was so soon to be superseded. Learning that one of the settlements not far from Jamestown was threatening to renounce his authority, he set out to investigate the matter. On the way a bag of gunpowder accidentally exploded in his boat, while he was asleep, and he was terribly burned. His sufferings were so great that he sprang overboard to smother the flames, and in his helplessness came near drowning. He was carried back to Jamestown, where his enemies, instead of pitying his sufferings, made a cowardly attempt to murder him.

**Sets out for England.**—Worn out at last by his sufferings and the ingratitude that was shown him, he resolved not to wait the arrival of Lord Delaware, but to go to England, that he might procure proper medical treatment for his wounds. He, therefore, bade adieu to the comrades for whom he had labored so faithfully and suffered so much, and his name has no longer a place on the pages of Virginia's history.

**Smith's Services and Character.**—He was the best friend of the colony in its hour of sorest need. In its service his courage never faltered, his cheerfulness never flagged,

and his devotion never swerved. He was entitled to the gratitude not only of his contemporaries, but of those who took up the work when his busy hands were forced to lay it down. His virtues have been recorded by many authentic witnesses; his faults proclaimed by those who envied his merit and the success he commanded, and such testimony should not be trusted. He has been called a boaster and accused of falsehood, and, while he undoubtedly loved praise and did not hesitate to record his own achievements, there is no proof that he misstated facts. After his return to London he was treated with respect and confidence by men of high position there, and was honored by the king. He made other voyages and visited New England, but his connection with the Virginia colony was ended.

**Smith's Death.**—He died in London in 1631, and was buried in St. Sepulchre's church, and over his head they carved his shield and the crest that Sigismund had given him. Such a man must of necessity have both friends and enemies. Let us number ourselves among the former.

**George Percy.**—It was September when Smith left Jamestown. George Percy succeeded him as president of the colony until Lord Delaware should arrive. Unfortunately, Ratcliffe with a band of idle, dissipated, quarrelsome companions remained to sow the seeds of evil.

**Number and Condition of Colonists.**—The colony numbered nearly five hundred souls. There was ample provision for food if judiciously distributed, and no lack of weapons and means of defence against the Indians. With a wise hand at the helm, it seemed that all would go well.

**Incapacity of Percy.**—But George Percy had not the requisite qualities for leadership. It was no easy task to maintain order with so many elements of discord at home. The savages, too, now that Smith was gone, made haste to avail themselves of the opportunity offered them and renewed their hostilities toward the whites.

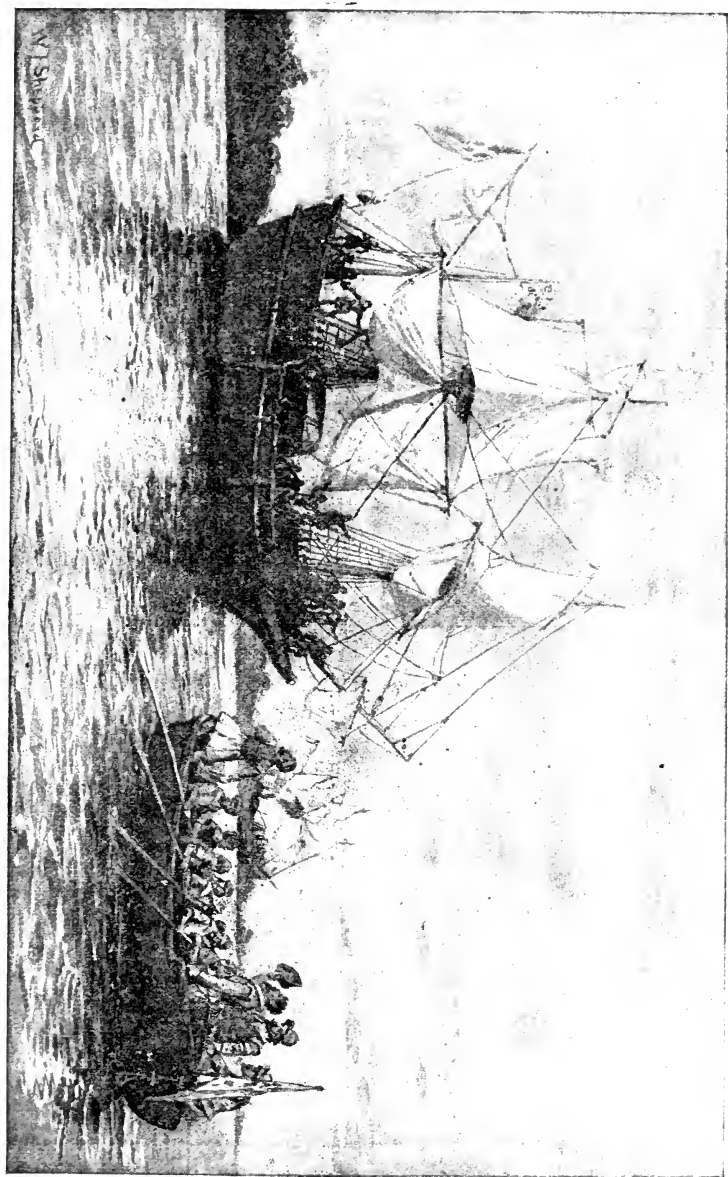
**Indian Hostilities Renewed—Other Troubles.**—Ratcliffe

and thirty of his companions fell victims to them and were slain, and with every day that passed the trouble increased. Percy was stricken with illness, and mutiny and disorder reigned. The food was all consumed or wasted, and again famine stared the colonists in the face. The Indians constantly harassed them, murdering now one little party of hunters or fishermen and now another. The people became so desperate for want of food that they welcomed death as an end of their sufferings.

**"The Starving Time."**—Some were even driven to cannibalism and ate the bodies of the Indians or of their own comrades who had perished. "The Starving Time," as it was called, lasted six months, and in that period 450 of the 500 colonists died, while the rest helplessly awaited their turn. Suddenly, in May, 1610, the cry of "A sail!" was heard, and presently there landed Sir Thomas Gates and Admiral Somers with their companions from the Bermudas.

**Jamestown Deserted.**—Amazed and discouraged at finding hunger and destitution where they had expected prosperity and plenty, Gates and Somers took council as to what they should do. Their people besought them piteously to take them away from the scene of their bitter misfortune, and finally it was decided to embark for England. We can picture the joy that the decision brought to many a sad and homesick heart. The final preparations were speedily made, and within a few days after their arrival everything was ready for the return voyage, and the little company bade what seemed a last farewell to their Virginia homes. It was with difficulty that Sir Thomas Gates prevented some of them from setting fire to the town in which they had experienced so much suffering and endured so many hardships.

**The Coming of Lord Delaware.**—They weighed anchor and were making their way down the river, when a boat was seen approaching from the opposite direction. When it reached them they found it contained a messenger from Lord Delaware, who had crossed the ocean at last and



A MESSAGE FROM LORD DELAWARE—THE COLONY SAVED.

reached Virginia just in time to prevent and forestall the extinction of the enterprise which had proved so costly not only in money but in suffering.

**Return to Jamestown.**—Together the ships returned to the wharves at Jamestown. The settlers disembarked and re-established themselves in their old quarters. Lord Delaware's first act on landing was to kneel long and silently in prayer. Then he arose and going into the empty and deserted church assembled the people for service. Here a sermon was preached by the Rev. Mr. Bucke, their minister. It was long since those walls had echoed to the sound of praise or thanksgiving, and when it was ended Lord Delaware spoke earnestly to the congregation, reminding them of the evils they had suffered because of their own folly, and urging them to new efforts for a happier future. And so once again the happy voices of children were heard in the deserted streets, and the fires were rekindled on many a hearth that had grown cold, and a new and better era dawned for this little band of English settlers on our shores.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Tell about the shipwrecked colonists on the Bermudas.
2. When and how did they reach Jamestown?
3. What was the condition of the colony.
4. How did Smith receive the news of his removal?
5. What accident happened to him?
6. Tell of his departure and services.
7. When did he die, and where was he buried?
8. Who succeeded Smith?
9. What was the number of the colonists, and how were they provided?
10. Tell of Percy's administration and "The Starving Time."
11. Tell of the arrival of the vessels from Bermuda.
12. To what determination did they come?
13. What fortunately prevented the final abandonment of the colony?
14. Tell of the return to Jamestown and what was done.

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

- 
- CHAPTER IV.—Number of Colonists.  
Work to be done.  
Indian Hostility.  
Defensive Measures.  
A New Danger.  
Official Incapacity and Treachery.  
Corn Procured.  
Return of Prosperity.  
The Fire of 1608.  
The Gold Fever.  
Smith Explores the Chickahominy.  
Smith Captured—His Condemnation and Rescue.  
Pocahontas.
- CHAPTER V.—Smith Explores the Chesapeake.  
His perils and Courage.  
Ratcliffe's Incapacity.  
Newport's Return.  
Visit to Powhatan.  
Entertained by Pocahontas.  
Coronation of Powhatan—The Result.  
Searching for Gold.  
The Condition of the Colony.  
Smith's Visit to Powhatan to Procure Corn.  
Warned by Pocahontas—Opecancanough's Treachery.  
Smith's Presence of Mind—His Plans for the Future.  
His Enemies.  
A New Charter.  
Lord Delaware.  
The Wreck on the Bermudas.
- CHAPTER VI.—On the Bermudas.  
Religious Worship.  
Efforts to Reach Virginia.  
Arrival at Jamestown.  
State of the Colony.  
Smith Prepares to Leave.  
Smith's Accident.  
Smith Sets Out for England.  
Smith's Services and Character.  
His Death.  
George Percy.  
Number and Condition of the Colonists.  
Incapacity of Percy.  
Indian Hostilities Renewed—Other Troubles.  
"The Starving Time."  
Jamestown Deserted.  
Coming of Lord Delaware.  
Return to Jamestown.

## CHAPTER VII.

LORD DELAWARE'S GOVERNMENT—SIR THOMAS DALE—CAPTURE OF POCAHONTAS—HER MARRIAGE AND DEATH—DEATH OF POWHATAN—LAND ASSIGNED TO COLONISTS.

**Delaware's Government.**—With the new rulers a new order of things prevailed and the old spirit of insubordination and unrest was replaced by one of discipline and tranquillity. Lord Delaware realized the strength of his own authority and he proposed to make others recognize it also.

**Vice-Regal Ceremonies.**—In order that the line which separated the nobleman and the governor from his subordinates might be the more clearly marked, he surrounded himself and his official acts with much more of pomp and ceremony than had been observed by any of the governors who had gone before him. His attendance upon the daily services of the church was made in state with a red-coated guard of honor about him, and he sat upon a velvet chair and had a cushion of the same fabric to kneel upon. The old chroniclers who have painted so clearly and vividly the men and events of those times have described minutely the church at Jamestown in which Lord Delaware worshipped, as well as his stately progress to and from the services, where he set an example by the earnestness of his devotion as well as by the regularity of his attendance.

**His Return to England.**—It would have been well for the colony could his wise spirit and earnest character have continued to guide and control it. But, unfortunately, his health failed, and prostrated by the malarial atmosphere of Jamestown, he was soon forced to return to England.

**His Vigorous Measures.**—Before he went he inaugurated a vigorous policy in dealing with the Indians and enacted firm and judicious laws for the future guidance of the



colony. In the early spring of 1611 he sailed for England intending some day to return to Virginia, and seven years later he did actually set out upon his western voyage but died on the way.

**Sir Thomas Dale.**—His successor was Sir Thomas Dale, who reached the colony two months after Delaware's departure to find that even in this short time discipline had become relaxed and idleness once more prevailed. But his stout heart and strong hand did not shrink from the task before him, and the most stubborn were soon reduced to order by his severe methods. He was soon to preside at an occasion of more than usual importance and interest, not only to the colony but to the Indians as well.

**Capture of Pocahontas.**—In the summer of 1612 Pocahontas left her father's village to pay a visit to Iapagaws, an old chief living on the Potomac, near the mouth of Nomini Creek. There was in Jamestown at this time a man named Argall, a clever but unprincipled sea-captain, who thought that if the English could get possession of Pocahontas they might hold her as a hostage for future good faith on the part of the Indians. So he agreed with Iapagaws to give him a copper kettle if he would betray Pocahontas into his hands. The Indians had no metal vessels or implements of any sort, and the offer of a copper kettle was a bribe few Indians could resist, and Iapagaws readily agreed to do as Argall wished. On pretext of a friendly visit, the chief and his wife, accompanied by the unsuspecting Pocahontas, went on board Argall's sloop, where she was deserted by her friends and left weeping bitterly. She was carried to Jamestown where she remained for over a year.

**Anger of Powhatan.**—Powhatan, so far from being humbled by his daughter's captivity, was terribly angered by what he justly considered the ingratitude of the English toward one who had so often befriended them. He resolutely refused to hold any communication with the colonists or to reply to any overtures looking to her release. The old spirit of friendliness was gone and distrust and hatred remained in its place.

**Mr. John Rolfe.**—Sir Thomas Dale had just decided that decisive measures must be taken with the Indians when he received a letter from Mr. John Rolfe, a gentleman of good standing in the colony, requesting his consent to marry Pocahontas. The governor was greatly pleased with this peaceful solution of the difficulties before him, and, believing that such a marriage would permanently cement the friendship between the two races, he gave his cordial assent to the proposal. Powhatan also signified his approval, and although he refused to come to Jamestown, sent his brother, Opachisto, and two sons, to represent him at the ceremony.

**Baptism and Marriage of Pocahontas—Her Visit to England.**—Pocahontas was baptized, receiving the name of Rebecca, and was soon thereafter married to John Rolfe in the church at Jamestown, in April, 1613. Three years later she accompanied her husband to London, where she was known as the “Lady Rebecca,” and was received with great distinction and presented at court.

**Her Meeting with Smith.**—Here she met again her old friend, Captain John Smith. She was overcome with surprise at seeing him once more and showed deep emotion, for she had been told that he was dead.

**Death of Pocahontas.**—Pocahontas died suddenly in March, 1617, at Gravesend, England, just as she was on the point of returning to Virginia. She left one son, who, when he was grown, returned to Virginia as Lieutenant Thomas Rolfe, from whom are descended some of the most prominent families in our State.

**Tobacco.**—John Rolfe was the first Englishman to cultivate tobacco in Virginia. It was soon to become a staple product and a source of great revenue to the colony.

**Abdication and Death of Powhatan.**—Powhatan never recovered from the blow which the loss of his favorite child inflicted on him, and shortly after her death he resigned his throne to his brother, Opetichapan, who was in turn succeeded by Opecanecanough, destined to prove a

bitter and implacable foe to the English. Powhatan died in 1618, and Opecancanough reigned in his stead.

**Dale's Iron Government.**—Sir Thomas Dale remained in office five years, and under him the settlement flourished, although there is no doubt that his rule was one of needless severity, and he was in consequence most unpopular with the people. Flogging and irons were the punishments inflicted for laziness. Mutineers and de-



PASSAGE OF JAMES RIVER THROUGH THE BLUE RIDGE.

serters were put to death with great cruelty. These were broken on the wheel, while the theft of food was punished by starvation.

**Regulation of Labor.**—He, however, instituted wise reforms—among others the law regulating the daily labors of the colonists. Theretofore they had all worked together for the common good, an arrangement which invariably results in encouraging idleness and in forcing the industrious to support the drones in the hive.

**Land Assigned to Colonists.**—Long before this the settlers had been promised that each would in time possess a portion of land in his own right, but this pledge had never been carried out. Governor Dale decided that it should be, and gave to those who had been longest in the colony three acres of ground with the privilege of spending eleven months in each year in its cultivation. The rest of the time they must labor for the common good of all.

**Effect of this Measure.**—This stimulated their personal industry and added to the general prosperity. Later on this good beginning was carried still further, the London Company granting fifty acres to each colonist for a homestead on payment of a nominal rent. The payment of twelve pounds ten shillings, entitled the settler to one hundred acres in his own right.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Tell of Lord Delaware's government.
2. What ceremonies were observed, and why?
3. What was his course towards the Indians?
4. When and why did he return to England?
5. Who succeeded him, and what was his character?
6. Tell about the capture of Pocahontas.
7. What was the effect on Powhatan?
8. What happy event brought a peaceful end of the trouble?
9. Tell the story of this.
10. Tell of the visit to England and of the death of Pocahontas.
11. Who introduced the cultivation of tobacco?
12. When did Powhatan die, and who succeeded him?
13. Tell something of Dale's government.
14. What wise changes did he make?
15. What was the effect?

## CHAPTER VIII.

DALE RETURNS TO ENGLAND—ARGALL'S RULE—FIRST COLONIAL ASSEMBLY—  
NEW CHARTER—CARGO OF MAIDENS ARRIVE—NEGROES IMPORTED—SLAVERY—  
MASSACRE OF 1622—DISSOLUTION OF THE LONDON COMPANY.

**Dale's Return to England.**—In 1616 Sir Thomas Dale returned to England, leaving the colony in a prosperous condition. It now numbered over three hundred and fifty, and had expanded into nearly a dozen settlements.

**George Yeardley.**—Dale left George Yeardley in charge of affairs, but in less than a year he was superseded by that Captain Argall, who had stolen Pocahontas and carried her in captivity to Jamestown.

**Argall's Dishonesty.**—There was little to recommend Argall save his ability. He was cruel, rapacious, and utterly unscrupulous and dishonest, and eventually the London Company was forced to recall him. He did not go empty-handed, however, but carried home a shipload of plunder for his own use.

**Yeardley Again Governor—First Colonial Assembly.**—Yeardley returned in 1619, doubly welcomed after the despotic rule of Argall. Believing the colonists should have "a hande in the government of themselves," he called the first popular legislative assembly held on this continent at Jamestown, July 30, 1619, nearly one year and five months before the landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth. It was composed of two representatives from each of the eleven boroughs into which the colony was divided; hence the assembly was called the House of Burgesses. These, with the governor and the newly-appointed council, were empowered to make laws for the government of the colony. The right then acquired of making laws for their own government the Virginians ever afterwards asserted. Its denial was the cause of the war of the Revolution, and it was to vindicate this right of self-government that the

people of the South took up arms in the late war. "Virginia was the first State in the world," says Bancroft, "composed of separate boroughs, diffused over an extensive surface, where the government was organized on the principle of universal suffrage. All freemen, without exception, were entitled to vote."

**The Great Charter.**—On the 24th day of July, 1621, the London Company established for Virginia a written constitution, which confirmed the rights which had been granted by Yeardley. It was a great charter, under which each Virginian was to have a voice in the government of his own country. By its terms the authority was to be placed in the hands of a governor, a council of State, and a general assembly. This was the foundation of free government in America, and upon this old charter, with its three branches, our present system is based. Our present Senate and House of Representatives in Washington and our governors and legislatures in the different States are but repetitions of this earlier form of colonial government. When this all important document reached Virginia, guaranteeing to the colony self-government and the maintenance of its own laws, there was great and general rejoicing.

**Providing Wives for the Colonists.**—The governmental affairs of the colony being satisfactorily arranged, the London Company turned its attention to social questions. Heretofore most of the colonists were men, and a large proportion of them bachelors. It was believed that a man who had a wife and a home would do much more efficient work in the community and be a better citizen than the man who had neither. Governor Yeardley held to this opinion, and he set to work to provide wives for those who were not already married.

**A Cargo of Maidens.**—A shipload of nearly a hundred young English maidens of good name and character were brought to Virginia to be wooed and wedded. There was to be no compulsion in the matter. Each young man was at perfect liberty to select a partner to his taste, and

she was equally at liberty to say "No." If he pleased her, however, they were married as soon as the gentleman had paid the company 120 pounds of tobacco to reimburse it for the expense of bringing his bride across the seas.

**Marrying and Giving in Marriage.**—The good ship, with her precious cargo, arrived safe at Jamestown, and all the gay bachelors from the neighboring settlements flocked there to welcome it, and for some days there was little business transacted save that of marrying and giving in marriage. This would seem to us a very hasty fashion of conducting a very serious affair, but the result was so satisfactory to the young women concerned in it that they wrote home and induced sixty of their friends to follow their example.

**Negroes Imported.**—About this time another ship loaded with very different passengers was sailing to Virginia, where her cargo was to sow the seed of bitter trouble in years to come. In August, 1619, a Dutch vessel arrived, having on board twenty negroes, who were offered to the neighboring planters for work in the tobacco and grain-fields, and were purchased by them.

**Slavery.**—No question was raised as to the propriety of this act. Slavery had been practiced in all ages and among all sorts and conditions of men. The patriarch of the Bible numbered his bondsmen as he did his cattle, and the serf of the feudal lord, with his iron collar, was no better than the beasts he tended. The life and liberty of men were not regarded in those days, and political offenders or prisoners taken in battle were often sold and shipped by the nations of Europe to their colonies as bond-servants. They were promised their freedom after a term of years, but if they were in debt to their employers they could be held longer. It was virtual slavery.

**Effects of Slavery.**—It was an evil day for Virginia when the shipload of Africans was landed at Jamestown, but it was the first step towards the emancipation of the

latter from the darkness and savagery of their native land. In the two centuries and a half which have passed since then the negroes in this country have acquired a degree of civilization in marked contrast with the ignorance of their brethren at home, and thus out of the many evils of slavery has come to them this real good.

**Prosperity of the Colony.**—And so amid much and growing prosperity the year 1622 was reached. The Virginians were no longer numbered by hundreds but by thousands, and the settlements extended from the falls of the James to its mouth, and even to the shores east of Chesapeake Bay. Jamestown has become “James Cittie”; the House of Burgesses meets there to represent and foster the interests of the colony, and many ships are loaded with tobacco at its wharves and sail thence to England. Industry and good order prevail, and the results are seen on every hand.

**Massacre of 1622.**—Suddenly, all this was changed, and in one short day scores of happy homes were left desolate. The author of all this evil was our old acquaintance Opecanough, who, through all these years, had professed the warmest friendship for the white people. His plans were laid with care and matured with the utmost secrecy. He did not intend his effort to rid himself of the whites to be a failure, so waited and plotted till he had secured the co-operation of every tribe in the vicinity, and in the spring of 1622 the blow fell. The settlers were utterly unprepared for it and were ruthlessly murdered. Neither age nor sex was spared, and three hundred and fifty fell victims to the savage fury of their enemies. The slaughter would have been much greater had not an Indian convert warned his employer the night before of the plot and the latter hastened to Jamestown with the tidings.

**The Country Aroused.**—Messengers were sent in every direction, but the time was too short to reach the outlying settlements and farm-houses, and in these the butchery was awful, for Opecanough spared no one. The



colonists speedily organized themselves into armed bands and falling upon the Indians soon reduced them to subjection, but the snake was only scotched, not killed, and in the years to come would lift its head and strike again.

**Dissolution of the London Company.**—Meanwhile, in England a struggle of another sort was in progress—a struggle between the London Company and the king as to who should govern Virginia. It ended in the triumph of the latter, and from this time the crown of England was to dictate the policy of the colony. James at once set about composing a new set of laws for his subjects on this side of the water, but he never completed his task, for he died in March, 1625, and his son, Charles I., ascended the throne made vacant by his father's death.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. When did Dale leave the colony?
2. What was its condition?
3. How is this shown?
4. Who succeeded him?
5. Who was the next governor, and what can you tell about him?
6. Who called the first Colonial Assembly, and when and where was it held?
7. What can you tell about it?
8. Why was it called the House of Burgesses?
9. How was the power of the Assembly confirmed?
10. Of what was this charter the foundation?
11. Tell about the cargo of maidens.
12. What other persons were imported about this time?
13. What is said of slavery at that time?
14. What were bond-servants?
15. What were some of the effects of slavery?
16. What was the condition of the colony in 1622?
17. What notable event happened in that year?
18. Tell about it.
19. What struggle was going on in England about this time, and how did it end?
20. Who succeeded James I. as King of England?

## CHAPTER IX.

SIR JOHN HARVEY—RELIGIOUS INTOLERANCE—LORD BALTIMORE—WILLIAM  
CLAIBORNE—SIR WILLIAM BERKELEY—MASSACRE OF 1644.

**Sir John Harvey Deposed.**—During the next twenty years events marched rapidly in Virginia. One governor after another came and went, none of them of such importance that his name need be remembered, except, perhaps, that of Sir John Harvey, who conducted himself with so much injustice and dishonesty that the patience of the people was exhausted. Finally, worn out with his tyrannies, they deposed him and sent him to England.

**Charles I. Takes His Part.**—When he reached England he promptly laid his grievances before the king, whose royal temper was ruffled by the rough treatment his officer had received. He refused to listen to any statement from the Virginians as to Harvey's numerous misdeeds and offences, and ordered them to receive him again as their governor and to obey him accordingly, and, much against their will, they were forced to submit to Sir John's authority for a time, at least.

**Religious Intolerance.**—I am sorry to have to record that these early Virginians, who were so opposed to tyranny in their rulers, did not themselves show that spirit of kindness and forbearance for the rights and opinions of others which they should have manifested, and this was especially the case in all questions appertaining to religion. The precepts our Saviour taught of the duty of Christians toward one another have not always been followed by those who bear his name, and, though we do not in these days burn people at the stake, nor cut off their heads because they do not believe as we do and worship in the same church, it is to be feared we sometimes say very unkind things to one another because of differ-

ences of religious belief. And so, perhaps, we should not too hastily condemn these ancestors of ours unless we are ourselves prepared to set a much better example than they did.

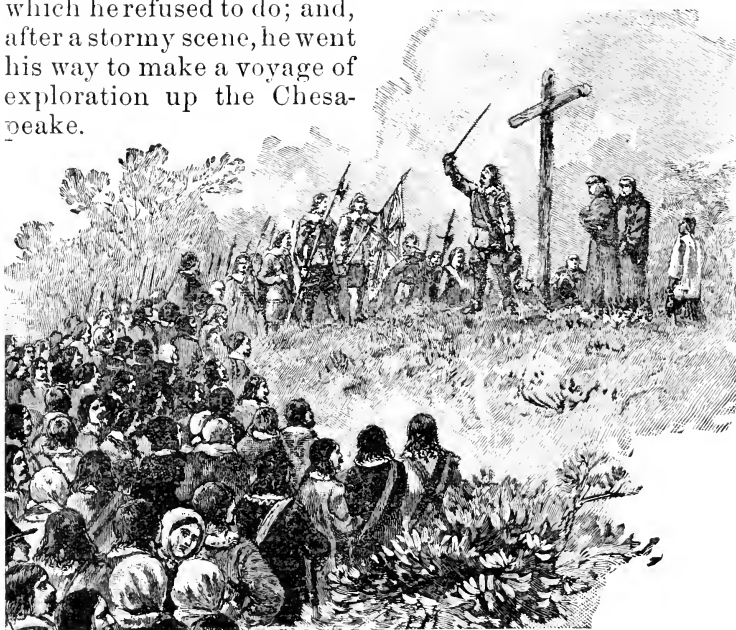
**The Established Church.**—The Episcopal Church was the church of England in those days as it is now, and it was, therefore, the established religion in Virginia. But all the people who had come into the colony in the thirty years or more of its existence did not belong to this church. There were Catholics and Dissenters or Non-conformists, and after awhile Baptists and Quakers as well, and against all of these the power of the law was to be used.

**Religious Proscription.**—Virginia would have none of them, and they were speedily ordered to join the established church or leave the colony. They were forbidden to hold any services, either privately or publicly, and were fined, imprisoned, and whipped. The Baptists especially were maltreated, because they did not believe that young children should be baptized. This want of belief was a terrible sin in the eyes of the Virginians, and was punished accordingly.

**Loss to the Colony.**—The result was that all these people, who were honest, law-abiding citizens, whose services would have been helpful to the colony, were driven out and fled, some to Puritan New England and some to Catholic Maryland. The New Englanders were quite as ready as the Virginians to persecute those who did not belong to their church, but the Marylanders gave a home and religious toleration to all who professed to believe in Jesus Christ, and this Catholic colony became a place of refuge for the oppressed of every denomination.

**Lord Baltimore.**—For many years fierce and bitter disagreements had been in progress in England between the Roman Catholics and Protestants, and just at this time the former were being worsted in the struggle, and so it happened that in 1630 Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, a Catholic noble of high standing, came to Virginia

in search of a place of refuge for those of his own faith. He first went to Jamestown, where he was treated with scant courtesy, which is not surprising in view of the fact that he announced his intention of securing a part of Virginia and founding a new colony. He was ordered to take the oath acknowledging the Church of England, which he refused to do; and, after a stormy scene, he went his way to make a voyage of exploration up the Chesapeake.



SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.

**Maryland Settled.**—He found the land so much to his liking that he returned to England and requested a grant from the king for the establishment of a colony, and was given what now constitutes the State of Maryland, to which he invited all loyal subjects of the king, without distinction of sect or party. He died before his plans matured, and his son succeeded to his titles and privileges. In 1634 the first settlement was made at St. Mary's, and the name Maryland given to the State

in honor of Queen Mary, or Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I.

**Opposition in Virginia to the Grant.**—There was great excitement in Virginia when this was known, for, according to its charter, the land given to Lord Baltimore was a part of the Virginia colony; but the people were powerless to oppose the acts of the king. So Lord Baltimore entered in and took possession of the land.

**William Claiborne.**—The feeling against him was none the less bitter because it could not be expressed, and at last one man stepped forward to represent the popular opinion in the matter. This was William Claiborne, a member of the king's council in Virginia, and secretary of the colony. He had been given by the king the grant of Kent Island, in the Chesapeake, opposite to the present city of Annapolis. Lord Baltimore considered that the island was a part of the State of Maryland, and ordered Claiborne to vacate it. The latter replied that it was a part of Virginia, deeded to him by the king's own hand, and he would not stir a foot.

**Claiborne Driven Out, Appeals to the King.**—In the end, however, he was overpowered and driven from his possessions and had to fly to Jamestown for safety. From that place he went to England to lay his complaints before the king, and pleaded his own cause with such earnestness that Charles ordered Calvert not to interfere with him further.

**The Conflict Renewed.**—Calvert does not seem to have regarded these royal commands, and Claiborne at length mustered a company of restless spirits, and, marching into Maryland, took the law into his own hands and seized the government; but his triumph was only temporary, for Calvert returned and he was again obliged to flee at the peril of his life.

**Sir William Berkeley, Governor.**—In 1642 Sir William Berkeley was sent as governor to Virginia. His term of office was a long one, and he himself was a person worthy of more than a passing glance. He had all the charm

and grace of manner of the accomplished cavalier and courtier. He was full of enthusiasm for his new office, for the people in Virginia, and only desired, he said, to do what was for their good. He was gracious and generous and given to hospitality. But under the smiling manner lay an inflexible will, and beneath all the charming courtesy a tyrannical spirit which would brook interference from no man. He was besides an ardent royalist and a bigoted member of the Church of England.

**His Intolerance.**—One of his first acts was to notify the Puritans that they must either recant their errors or leave the colony, and he proceeded to enforce the laws against them with great vigor. The writers of that day have drawn a pathetic picture of the sad procession of stern-faced men, and patient women, and helpless children that set out from Virginia to seek some spot where they might worship God as their own consciences dictated.

**Indian Massacre of 1644.**—About this time the hatred which had been sullenly smouldering in the breast of Opecanough for so long a time burst forth again. He was old and stricken in years, and so feeble that his warriors bore him on a litter, but his fierce spirit was unbroken, and he was resolved once more to strike a blow at the enemies of his people. As before, the settlers were utterly unprepared for the attack, and 350 of them were massacred. But his triumph was of short duration. Opecanough was taken prisoner and carried to Jamestown, where he died of wounds inflicted by one of his guards. This was the last effort of the Indians for supremacy within the colony, though they still continued to harass the borders, where the settlers, living alone and at long distances from each other, were an easy prey to their violence.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Who was Sir John Harvey, and what can you tell of him?
2. What church was established in Virginia?
3. Were there other denominations also?
4. How did the law treat these?

5. How did this affect the colony?
6. Where did they go?
7. How were they received in New England?
8. How in Maryland?
9. Who was Lord Baltimore?
10. Where did he first go, and how was he received?
11. Tell about the settlement of Maryland.
12. To whom did the land belong?
13. Who was Claiborne?
14. How did the trouble arise between him and Calvert?
15. Tell the result.
16. When did Sir William Berkeley become governor?
17. Give some account of him.
18. What was one of his first acts?
19. Tell about the Indian massacre of 1644.

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

## CHAPTER VII.—Delaware's Government.

Vice-regal ceremonies.  
His Return to England.  
His Vigorous Measures.  
Sir Thomas Dale.  
Capture of Pocahontas.  
Anger of Powhatan.  
Mr. John Rolfe.  
Baptism and Marriage of Pocahontas—Her Visit to England.  
Her meeting with Smith.  
Death of Pocahontas.  
Tobacco.  
Abdication and Death of Powhatan.  
Dale's Iron Government.  
Regulation of Labor.  
Land Assigned to Colonists.  
Effects of this Measure.

## CHAPTER VIII.—Dale's Return to England.

George Yeardley.  
Argall's Dishonesty.  
Yeardley Again Governor—First Colonial Assembly.  
The Great Charter.  
Providing Wives for the Colonists.  
A Cargo of Maidens.  
Marrying and Giving in Marriage.  
Negroes Imported.  
Slavery.  
Bond Servants.  
Convicts.  
Effects of Slavery.  
Prosperity of the Colony.  
Massacre of 1622.  
Dissolution of the London Company.

## CHAPTER IX.—Sir John Harvey Deposed.

Charles I. Takes His Part.  
Religious Intolerance.  
The Established Church.  
Religious Proscription.  
Loss to the Colony.  
Lord Baltimore.  
Maryland Settled.  
Opposition of Virginia to the Grant.  
William Claiborne.  
Claiborne Driven Out—Appeals to the King.  
The Conflict Renewed.  
Sir William Berkeley, Governor.  
His Intolerance.  
Indian Massacre of 1644.



## CHAPTER X.

THE CIVIL WAR IN ENGLAND—LOYALTY OF VIRGINIA—YIELDS TO CROMWELL—  
THE RESTORATION.

**The King and the Parliament**—A struggle of another kind was now progressing in England, and the colonists watched with anxious eyes the bitter conflict in the mother country between the king and his Parliament.

**Loyal Virginia.**—The Virginians were loyal to the former, and, with their courtly governor at their head, made ready to openly express their sympathy, and prepared to fight till the last for the House of Stuart. And when the end came with the triumph of the Parliament, and Charles I. atoned for all his errors on the block, there was sincere sorrow in many a heart and home in the colony.

**Coming of the Cavaliers.**—After the execution of King Charles I. there was but little peace or safety for the cavaliers, as his followers were called, and they flocked to Virginia where a hearty welcome met them on every hand.

**Resolutions of the Burgesses.**—The Burgesses at their first meeting after the king's execution expressed the sentiments of the people at large when they denounced the execution of the king and pronounced sentence against all who approved or upheld it.

**Charles II. Invited to Virginia.**—Charles, afterwards the Second, then a homeless wanderer living in exile, was invited to seek refuge with his faithful and loyal subjects in Virginia, and, though he did not accept it, the invitation which was conveyed to him was none the less sincere.

**Attitude of the Other Colonies.**—In this act of defiance towards Parliament, Virginia was not encouraged nor supported by the other colonies. New England was Pu-

ritan to the core. The Dutch did not care who reigned in England, while Maryland thought discretion the better part of valor, and speedily made obeisance to Cromwell.

**Action of Cromwell.**—Cromwell was not a man to brook insubordination in any direction, and an embargo was forthwith laid upon the trade of the colony of Virginia, and two armed vessels were sent to bring the people of Virginia to a better frame of mind.

**Submission of the Colony.**—Governor Berkeley organized a force to meet and resist them, but on their arrival a long consultation was held, and it was decided that the colony was not strong enough to contend against the power of the mother country, and Virginia surrendered, but not until it was agreed that the "people of Virginia" should have all the liberties of the free-born people of England; that their business should be transacted through their own grand assembly, and they should have "as free trade as the people of England." No taxes or customs were to be levied except by their own representatives, and no forts erected or garrisons maintained without their consent. The sentiment of loyalty to the king still remained, and the number of his adherents increased with every ship that sailed for Jamestown.

**Richard Bennett, Governor.**—Of course such an enthusiastic cavalier as Berkeley had shown himself to be was not permitted to remain in office, and he was accordingly supplanted by the Commonwealth's representative, Mr. Richard Bennett, who was elected by the burgesses, and who took the oath of office in April, 1652.

**Green Spring.**—Berkeley, meanwhile, retired to a plantation which he owned at Green Spring, about two miles from Jamestown, and there kept open house for all those poverty-stricken royalists who cared to accept his hospitality, while they waited and hoped for better days when the king should enjoy his own again.

**Claiborne's Short-Lived Triumph.**—Meanwhile, serious trouble was brewing in Maryland. It was the old quar-

rel between Claiborne and Calvert come to life once more, and this time Claiborne had on his side all the power of the Puritan government, with Cromwell at its head; and so he temporarily triumphed, but from that time on Maryland was rent with warring factions until, worn out with civil strife, her representatives, on the 12th of March, 1660, convened and voted themselves a lawful assembly, independent of any other authority in the province.

**The Restoration.**—In May, 1660, Charles II. returned to England, and was crowned king, and all his loyal subjects gave thanks, and many who had pined in exile hastened home to secure a share of the good times that were coming.

**The News in Virginia.**—In Virginia—where on the death of Governor Matthews, there being then no governor in Virginia and no ruler in England, the House of Burgesses had assembled in March, 1660, and enacted a law declaring the supreme power in the government of the colony to reside in the assembly, and directing “all writs to issue in its name until there should arrive from England a commission which the assembly itself shall adjudge to be lawful—the news of the restoration was received with great rejoicing. Sir William Berkeley, who had acknowledged the validity of the acts of the burgesses and expressly agreed not to dissolve that body in any event, was elected governor.

**Progress of Virginia.**—The population of Virginia now numbered forty thousand souls, of which two thousand were negroes. The larger proportion of these had been born in the colony. There were wealth and prosperity and preachers and churches, but as yet there were no public schools.

**Berkeley on Free Schools and the Printing-Press.**—For this the governor openly expressed his thankfulness, adding the hope that there would be neither schools nor printing-press for a hundred years to come, from which we may see that he was not a man of broad views nor enlightened opinions.

**Navigation Act.**—But serious matters were soon to engage the attention of the colony. From the time of its earliest settlement the one demand of the king of England, whoever he might be, was for gold. The colonists had failed to dig this out of the ground, as was expected, but they were none the less forced to provide it by another method. Tobacco, the staple product of the colony, commanded a high price in England, and, as the Virginians could not send the gold, they were commanded to send the tobacco, which could be sold for it. But this was not all. The colonists were absolutely forbidden to trade or have dealings with any other country than England. The English merchant bought their crops, paying them what he chose, and the English merchant sold the colonists goods at his own prices. Besides this, the king himself must have a share in the profits for his own purse, and so heavy duties were laid upon all that went out of and all that came into the colony. The result was that it soon became difficult for the planter to provide for the wants of himself and his family. The English merchant grew richer and the Virginia planter poorer every day.

**Virginia Protests.**—The Virginians appealed and protested in vain, and they were soon to receive a new evidence of the selfishness and indifference of the monarch who was called King of England, Scotland, France, Ireland, and Virginia.

**Royal Grants.**—When Charles II. came back to his native land and his father's throne, after his long exile, he found a throng of faithful and loyal subjects, who told him they had suffered many hardships and sustained great losses for his sake, and asked to be rewarded for their devotion. The easiest way for him to do this was to take what belonged to his other subjects, who had not been loyal, and give it to those who had. But even when he had done this there was not enough to go around, so he bethought him of his rich province of Virginia, where there was land enough and to spare for everybody, and

he forthwith proceeded to give that away. It is true that much of this land was already owned by men who were living on it and had cultivated it and paid taxes on it, but this made little difference to the careless, idle, pleasure-loving young man who was now king of England, and he bestowed the Northern Neck, the territory lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac rivers, on some of his worthless favorites as recklessly as if it were an acre of barren soil. Truly the Virginians had cause to feel that their loyalty to the king was costing them a good deal.

**Virginia's Protests Disregarded.**—Of course, they protested and sent commissioners to England to lay their grievances before Charles and to appeal for their rights, and in his usual careless fashion he consented to hear them, but he did not bother himself much about the matter, and the question was still unsettled when a new cause for anxiety arose in the colony. The Indians had gone on the war-path and were robbing and murdering the settlers on the border.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What war was going on in England about this time?
2. Whom did the Virginians favor?
3. How did it end?
4. How did this affect the colony?
5. What action was taken by the Burgesses?
6. Who was invited to Virginia?
7. What was the feeling of the other colonies?
8. What steps were taken against Virginia, and what was the result?
9. Who was made governor?
10. When?
11. What became of Berkeley?
12. What trouble occurred in Maryland?
13. When was Charles II. restored?
14. Effect in Virginia.
15. What had happened there in March?
16. What was the state of the colony?
17. What about free schools and the printing-press?
18. What was the Navigation Act?
19. How did it affect the Virginians, and what did they do?
20. Tell how Charles II. rewarded his followers.
21. Where is the Northern Neck?
22. What new cause of anxiety arose in the colony?

## CHAPTER XI.

## BACON'S REBELLION.

**Nathaniel Bacon.**—About the year 1672 a young English gentleman came over to Virginia who was destined to play a very prominent part in the events of the future in the colony. His name was Nathaniel Bacon, and he was a cousin to that Lord Culpeper, high in favor with the king, to whom, among others, the Northern Neck had been given. Bacon had been possessed of considerable property, but it seems that he had wasted or mismanaged it so that he was not a rich man when he settled at Curl's Neck on James River.

**Bacon's Character.**—But he was undoubtedly clever, a man of recognized ability and strong character. Young as he was, he was a member of the council, a high honor for one of his years. He was at this time living quietly at his home attending to his own affairs, but, like every intelligent Virginian of that day, interested and anxious for the welfare of the colony.

**Condition of the Period.**—Just then there was much to make men apprehensive and thoughtful. The Indians were restless and threatening to renew hostilities at home, while in England the king was busy trying to devise new methods of extorting more money from Virginia to be wasted on his own pleasure or given away to the idle, vicious crowd of young noblemen about him. In those days men had more time for quiet, earnest thought than they have now. There were no newspapers and but few books. They had few amusements save such as the woods and the streams afforded. They were not crowded together in cities or even thickly settled country neighborhoods. Jamestown itself only numbered a dozen or more houses, and the homes of the planters were far

apart, the only means of communication being on horse-back or by boats. So these Virginians, busy with their own affairs and meeting only at intervals at church, at the courts, or at a horse-race, had ample leisure to form their opinions on all public questions, and their views were generally openly and decidedly expressed.

**Indian Hostilities—Bacon Chosen Leader.**—Nathaniel Bacon was popular with his friends and neighbors, and when the news came that the Indians were renewing their hostilities, he was asked to take command of a small company, which mustered immediately to go to the rescue of the outlying settlements. It happened that the attack had been made upon Bacon's own plantation and his overseer killed at Bacon's Quarter Branch, near where the Richmond Locomotive Works now stand, and he was naturally the more interested in the matter.

**Applies for a Commission.**—He therefore accepted the command of his comrades, and nothing now remained to be done save to obtain the governor's permission to set out, and so a messenger was sent asking him for a commission.

**Berkeley's Hesitation.**—Berkeley did not, of course, wish the depredations of the Indians to go unpunished, but, on the other hand, he did not wish Bacon to have command of the expedition against them. The governor knew that the people were already dissatisfied and discontented. They had themselves invited him to be their governor, and they might just as easily invite him to retire from that office and put in his place a younger man more in sympathy with themselves and less willing to oblige the king in all things than he had shown himself to be. So he hesitated and delayed his reply, and in the end did not send the commission requested for Bacon. When the messenger returned without the desired paper the company waiting for it were very indignant.

**Bacon Goes Without It.**—The outrages of the Indians were continuing, their friends were being murdered and their property destroyed, and the governor would not

allow them to act. They took counsel together, and decided to go without the permission of the governor; and, as the old writers tell us, signed a "round robbin" to stand by one another come what might, and so rode forth against the savages.

**Arrest of Bacon.**—When the news of what they had done reached Governor Berkeley he was greatly incensed and ordered the arrest of Bacon and of his companions, which was accomplished forthwith, and they were brought to Jamestown as prisoners.

**Required to Ask Pardon.**—Here Bacon was told that if he would publicly confess that he had done wrong in acting without the governor's permission he would be pardoned, as well as all who were concerned with him. It was a hard and bitter humiliation for him, but he finally consented, perhaps as much for his friends' sake as his own.

**Complies and Resumes His Seat in the Council.**—But he made one stipulation. He would not consent to ask pardon of the governor personally. He would only do so to the House of Burgesses, who were nearly all his friends and in sympathy with him. And this he accordingly did. He was at last permitted to take his old seat in the council, was promised his commission as general, and the whole matter seemed peacefully settled to the great satisfaction of every one.

**Duplicity of Berkeley.**—But the trouble was not yet ended. Berkeley had really no intention of giving Bacon the authority he desired, or even of giving him his freedom. While making all these fair promises, he was secretly arranging to have him arrested again.

**Flight of Bacon and His Return.**—Bacon learning this, fled in the night from Jamestown, and set about rallying his friends for armed resistance against the governor. In a short time he was back in Jamestown with 500 men behind him. He marched to the State-house, where the burgesses and the council, with Berkeley at their head, were sitting.



**Berkeley Refuses the Commission.**—The fiery old governor rose from his chair of state, came down to where Bacon stood surrounded by his followers, and told him openly that he was a traitor and a rebel and should have no commission, adding that they might shoot him dead before he would ever sign such a paper.



"A FAIR MARK, SHOOT!"

**Bacon's Reply.**—"Sir," Bacon said in reply, "we came here for a commission against the heathen who daily murder us and spill our brethren's blood, and not to fight you. My sword shall rust in its scabbard before ever a hair of your head is touched."

**Berkeley Yields.**—In the end Bacon entered the State-house, and, appearing before the burgesses, demanded his commission as general, which was finally given him, endorsed by the governor; and the resolute young man straightway went back with his friends to the head of York River and set about the work of reducing the Indians to order.

**Bacon Proclaimed a Rebel.**—Here the news reached him that the governor had retracted his action, and had again proclaimed Bacon and his friends rebels and traitors. The tidings were conveyed to the camp by two friends of Bacon's, Mr. Drummond and Mr. Lawrence, both men of high standing in the colony.

**Bacon Marches on Jamestown.**—Bacon called his men together and laid the matter before them. His own wish was that they should forthwith seek the governor and demand by what right he continued to accuse and misrepresent them and their intentions. To this they all agreed, and so, unhappily, the men who were going to fight the Indians turned their arms upon the governor and those who supported him. A proclamation was issued calling on the people to sustain them, and preparations were made to march against the governor and his forces.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Who was Nathaniel Bacon?
2. Where had he settled?
3. What was his character and position?
4. What was the condition of the period?
5. How did the Virginians live?
6. What caused Bacon to ask for a commission?
7. What did Berkeley do?
8. Why?
9. What did Bacon and his friends do?
10. What did they sign?
11. Tell the result.
12. What was Bacon required to do?
13. Was the trouble over?
14. Why not?
15. Tell what Bacon did then.
16. Tell of the interview between Bacon and Berkeley.
17. How did it end?
18. What action did Bacon take?

## CHAPTER XII.

BACON'S REBELLION, CONTINUED—DEATH OF CHARLES II.—KING JAMES II.—  
WILLIAM AND MARY.

**Berkeley Collects an Army.**—Meanwhile the governor had not been idle, but, gathering together such men as he could command, in all about a thousand, had set out for Jamestown, of which he was not to be permitted to take immediate possession. The place was in charge of Mr. Drummond and Mr. Lawrence, and contained also eight or nine hundred men, under command of Colonel Hansford, one of Bacon's ablest officers.

**Takes Possession of Jamestown.**—Berkeley promised amnesty to all friends of Bacon in the town, save Drummond and Lawrence, if they would surrender, and Hansford, after giving these gentlemen time to escape, surrendered the town to the governor, who immediately set about preparing for Bacon's arrival, which he foresaw, would not be long delayed.

**Bacon Besieges Jamestown.**—Nor did Bacon disappoint him, for he shortly appeared before Jamestown with a company of several hundred men and sat down to lay siege to the place and starve the governor out.

**A Blot on Bacon's Fame.**—And now we come to the greatest blot on Bacon's fame as a brave man and as a gentleman, the most unworthy act of his career. He sent his men through the surrounding country with orders to bring to his camp the wives of such gentlemen as had sided with the governor. One of these ladies he sent into the town to notify her husband and those of the others that he meant to erect fortifications about the place, and that their wives would all be placed in front of his men while they worked, and that they would be kept there till all was finished, so that if any shots were fired the helpless women would be the victims; and this he duly did.

**Jamestown Captured.**—Of course, he accomplished what he wished, and Jamestown eventually fell into his hands, but he forever disgraced his name and memory by this act. No brave soldier nor true gentleman ever insults or maltreats a woman, however humble her station. In our own great civil war, where many thousands of men were engaged, there is no instance of the soldiers who fought under Lee and Johnston and Stonewall Jackson having ever insulted or injured a woman or a child.

**The Town Burnt.**—Bacon took possession of Jamestown, and, after a consultation with his advisers, decided to burn it, and Mr. Lawrence and Mr. Drummond, with their own hands, set fire to their homes. And so the old town, where John Smith had labored and suffered, and Pocahontas had come and gone, which had seen so much of sorrow and happiness, too, was left a heap of dust and ashes. It was a useless and foolish act.

**Death of Bacon.**—Bacon himself was soon to pay the penalty for his rashness. While he and his men had been camped about Jamestown, they had been exposed to the same unhealthful influences which had attacked the early settlers. He was now stricken down with fever, and died so suddenly that his friends insisted that he had been poisoned, but there is no proof of this.

**Berkeley's Malignity.**—There is no doubt, however, that the governor much desired to get possession of his body that it might be hung on a gibbet, and to prevent this his followers carefully concealed it. Some writers tell us it was weighted with stone and sunk in the river, and others that it was buried in the depths of the forest. Wherever the spot, the secret of his last resting place remains unknown to this day.

**Dispersion of Bacon's Followers.**—Their leader being dead, Bacon's followers were anxious to return peacefully to their homes once more, but this was not to be. They still had Sir William Berkeley to reckon with, and they found him a man who knew not justice nor mercy.

**Berkeley's Butcheries—Hansford.**—That Col. Hansford,

who had commanded at Jamestown, was the first victim. Young and bright and gay and full of courage, one might have thought his enemy's heart would have been softened towards him, but such was not the case. His one request was that he might be shot like a soldier and not be hanged. "You shall die like a rebel," the governor replied, and hanged him accordingly.

**Edmund Cheeseman.**—Young Edmund Cheeseman was next led before him, and was asked why he had allied himself with Bacon. Before he could reply his wife fell on her knees before Berkeley, and prayed him to spare her husband's life, that it was she who had influenced him to his course. "Let me bear the punishment," she pleaded, "and let him be pardoned." The answer of the governor was to insult her, and her husband was led forth to his death.

**Drummond.**—When William Drummond was led in, Sir William made him a low bow, and said, "You are very welcome. I am more glad to see you than any man in Virginia. You shall be hanged in half an hour."

**Bland.**—Giles Bland, who had been captured sometime before, and whose friends had interested themselves to obtain a pardon from the king, was hanged by the governor with the king's pardon in his pocket.

**The King's Comment.**—And so the work went on and men were hurried to the scaffold with scarcely a pretence of a trial. In ten days twenty-two had been executed and three had died of cruel treatment in prison. When Charles heard the news in England he said: "That old fool has taken away more lives in that naked country than I have for the murder of my father"; which was the truth.

**The King's Proclamation—Vote of the Burgesses.**—The king immediately issued a proclamation condemning Berkeley's conduct as contrary to his wishes and commands. The House of Burgesses met and voted that the "governor spill no more blood," and orders came from England that he should resign his office. This he at first

refused to do, but finally he was forced to yield and returned to England, where he died shortly after. There was general rejoicing over his departure and guns were fired and bonfires kindled to express the joy of the people at his going.

**Effect of the Rebellion.**—The effect of Bacon's rebellion was not a happy one for the colony. Much blood had been spilt and much evil wrought, and the colony was to suffer for it in the future. The conflict is justly regarded by historians as one of the most important events in the progress of Virginia. Short as it was it afforded strong evidence of the temper and feeling of the Virginians. It was not merely a struggle between an old governor and a young planter. The Virginians had become dissatisfied with the treatment they received and had risen up and fought against the king's representative, and now they must settle for it and pay the penalty of their acts; but a hundred years later the same spirit was to be displayed, ending in the Revolution and the separation of the colonies from the mother country. The king sent his royal commissioners to Virginia to investigate the state of affairs there. Nearly all of Bacon's laws were repealed and more rigid ones for the government of the colony were passed, but the justice of Bacon's demands was shown by the subsequent re-enactment of similar laws.

**Royal Governors.**—One royal governor after another came and went, among them Lord Culpeper, who only valued his office for the money to be got out of it, and who finally became so grasping and tyrannical that the Virginia Council besought the king to recall him, which was finally done. But his successor, Lord Effingham, proved little better.

**James II.**—In 1685 Charles died, and his brother, James II., succeeded him on the throne of England. The Virginians took heart again, and hoped for better days, but the first act of the new king was to express his disapproval of their conduct and to notify them that they must do better in future.

**Revolution of 1688—King William and Queen Mary.—**

But James soon had rebellious subjects nearer home who demanded his attention, and in 1688 he was forced to fly from England, and William and Mary were crowned and reigned there in his stead.

## QUESTIONS.

1. Tell what Berkeley was doing.
2. What blot is there on Bacon's fame?
3. Tell about the capture and destruction of Jamestown.
4. Tell of the death and burial of Bacon.
5. What of Bacon's followers?
6. Tell of Hansford, Cheeseman, Drummond and Bland.
7. What did the King say when he heard the news?
8. What put a stop to Berkeley's butcheries?
9. What became of Berkeley?
10. How did the rebellion affect the colony?
11. What was the general character of the royal governors?
12. Who succeeded Charles II., and when?
13. How long did he reign?
14. Who succeeded him?

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

---

### CHAPTER X.—The King and the Parliament—Loyal Virginia.

Coming of the Cavaliers.  
 Resolutions of the Burgesses.  
 Charles II. Invited to Virginia.  
 Attitude of the other Colonies.  
 Action of Cromwell.  
 Submission of the Colony.  
 Richard Bennett, Governor.  
 Green Spring.  
 Claiborne's Short-lived Triumph.  
 The Restoration.  
 The News in Virginia—Progress of Virginia.  
 Berkeley on Free Schools and the Printing-Press.  
 Navigation Act.  
 Virginia Protests.  
 Royal Grants.

### CHAPTER XI.—Nathaniel Bacon—Bacon's Character.

Condition of the Period.  
 Indian Hostilities—Bacon Chosen Leader.  
 Applies for a Commission.  
 Berkeley's Hesitation.  
 Bacon Goes Without It—Arrest of Bacon.  
 Required to Ask Pardon.  
 Complies and Resumes His Seat in the Council.  
 Duplicity of Berkeley.  
 Flight of Bacon and His Return.  
 Berkeley Refuses the Commission.  
 Bacon's Reply.  
 Berkeley Yields.  
 Bacon Proclaimed a Rebel—Bacon Marches on Jamestown.

### CHAPTER XII.—Berkeley Collects an Army.

Takes Possession of Jamestown.  
 Bacon Besieges Jamestown.  
 A Blot on Bacon's Fame.  
 Jamestown Captured.  
 The Town Burnt.  
 Death of Bacon.  
 Berkeley's Malignity.  
 Dispersion of Bacon's Followers.  
 Berkeley's Butcheries—Hansford—Edmund Cheeseman  
 Drummond—Giles Bland.  
 The King's Comment—The King's Proclamation.  
 Vote of the Burgesses.  
 Effect of the Rebellion.  
 Royal Governors.  
 James II.  
 Revolution of 1688—King William and Queen Mary.



## CHAPTER XIII.

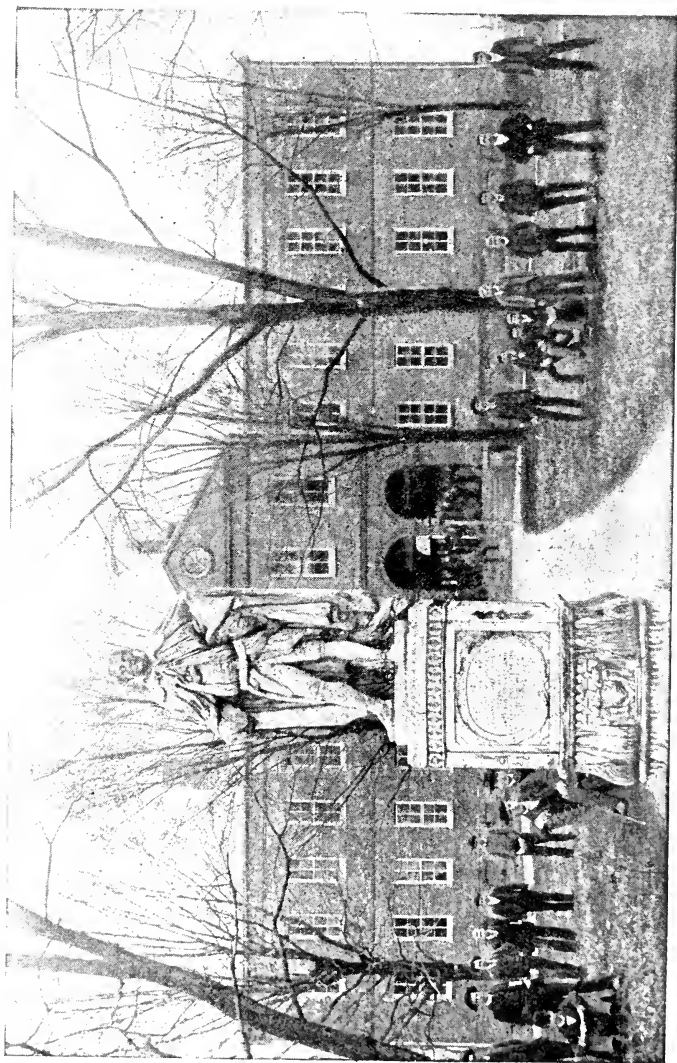
GROWTH OF THE COLONY—WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE—QUEEN ANNE—GOVERNOR SPOTSWOOD—COL. BYRD—THE HUGUENOTS—THE SCOTCH-IRISH.

**The Close of the Century.**—The last years of the seventeenth century were passing rapidly away, and the time was close at hand which was to bring many changes to Virginia. The colony had become a plantation and the plantation a Commonwealth, and, though still controlled by a governor, and a king as well, the Virginians were for a time, at least, to enjoy prosperity and to advance in more than one direction.

**William and Mary College.**—The first event of importance was the founding of William and Mary College, in 1693, which is, after Harvard, the oldest seat of learning in America. For this famous school we are indebted to Mr. James Blair, a clergyman, who had the welfare of the Commonwealth and the education of her young men so earnestly at heart that he did not rest until he had induced the burgesses to give him authority to go to England and secure money and a charter from the king and queen for a college. After many delays and disappointments he finally secured the necessary funds and returned to Williamsburg to inaugurate the good work. This town became the capital, having been made such in 1698, because of the destruction of Jamestown by Bacon and the desire to secure a more healthful location.

**Sir Christopher Wren.**—The plans for the college building were made by Sir Christopher Wren, one of the most famous English architects and designers. The great cathedral of St. Paul's, in London, was built by Wren, who is still held one of the greatest architects of the world.

**The College Destroyed.**—The edifice which Wren designed at Williamsburg was burned in 1705, and was restored only to be destroyed again and again; but each



WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE, ESTABLISHED 1693.

time its walls have been raised anew and its good work continues to this day. Many Virginians who have won fame and distinction within and without the State have been students in the old college of which James Blair laid the foundation-stone over two hundred years ago.

**"Good Queen Anne."**—In 1702 Queen Anne ascended the English throne. She is remembered in history as "Good Queen Anne," and the Virginians had reason to endorse her claim to this title. Her name has been given to two counties—Princess Anne and Fluvanna, and to five of our streams—the North Anna, South Anna, Fluvanna, Rivanna, and Rapidan rivers. She interested herself in the welfare of the churches of Virginia, and more than once sent gifts to them. The bell of Bruton church, at Williamsburg, which still calls its worshippers to prayer, and the communion service as well, which is yet carefully preserved there, were given to the parish by Queen Anne.

**Governor Spotswood.**—In 1710 Alexander Spotswood came as governor to Virginia, where he was destined to remain for the rest of his life. For twelve years he wisely and faithfully watched over the interest of the people, having their welfare at heart, and inaugurated many new enterprises for their good.



ALEXANDER SPOTSWOOD.

**His Enterprises.**—He established furnaces for the manufacture of iron, and encouraged the planting of vineyards and the cultivation of the grape. Having been appointed postmaster-general for the colonies he established the first post-offices, and mails were carried between Williamsburg and Philadelphia in eight or ten days. Spotswood appointed a very well known American, Benjamin Franklin, postmaster for the province of Pennsylvania.

**Indian School.**—Out of his own private means Governor Spotswood equipped and supported a school for the edu-

cation and conversion of the Indians; and thither he often went riding through the woods on horseback to watch over the welfare and progress of the young Indian students.

**Expedition to the Valley.**—In August, 1716, he set out from Chelsea, the home of his son-in-law, Austin Moore, on the Mattaponi River, upon the famous expedition with which his name has been associated, towards the Blue Ridge Mountains. It was a gay and gallant company that journeyed with him, with a train of pack-horses and a retinue of servants. They went at their leisure, hunting



SPOTSWOOD CROSSING THE BLUE RIDGE.

and fishing by day and camping by night; and when the highest point of the beautiful range of mountains was reached they saw at their feet, stretching miles away towards the horizon, the great valley of the Shenandoah, often called "the granary of Virginia."

**The Knights of the Golden Horseshoe.**—In commemoration of this daring expedition into the heart of what was then a savage wilderness, the governor presented each of his friends who accompanied him with a small golden horseshoe, set with jewels, and this was the origin of the "Knights of the Golden Horseshoe."

**Blackbeard.**—But Sir Alexander Spotswood did not al-

ways pass his time in such pleasant holiday fashion as this, for he was a brave soldier as well as a courtly and gracious nobleman. When he learned that the infamous pirate and ruffian, John Theach, called "Blackbeard," was cruising along the coast of Virginia and North Carolina, plundering and murdering as he sailed, he took prompt measures with him.

**Death of Blackbeard.**—Two ships were manned by Virginians, under command of Lieutenant Maynard, and sent in pursuit of "Blackbeard." Having overtaken the pirate in Pamlico Sound, on the coast of North Carolina, they boarded his vessel and killed him in a hand-to-hand fight. Thirteen of his men were hanged at Williamsburg and an end made of their depredations forever. Benjamin Franklin, then a printer's apprentice in Boston, wrote a ballad about the battle between Lieutenant Maynard and "Blackbeard," which he sold on the streets of that old town.

**Colonel William Byrd's Visit to Germanna.**—For many of the details relating to the life of Governor Spotswood we are indebted to his friend, Colonel William Byrd, of Westover, on James River. He paid a visit to the governor at his beautiful home at Germanna Ford, on the Rapidan River, where he lived most happily with his wife and children, to whom he was tenderly devoted, and where Lady Spotswood welcomed Colonel Byrd with much hospitality. One day while they were conversing in the drawing-room, a tame deer wandered in through the open door, and catching a glimpse of his own reflection in a large mirror, dashed at it, shivering the glass, and in his fright overturning a table loaded with valuable china as well. We are told that Lady Spotswood bore the loss with good temper and patience as a gentlewoman should. Colo-



COLONEL WILLIAM BYRD,  
THE FOUNDER OF RICHMOND.

nel Byrd gives us many another picture of the happy home-life at Germanna.

**Sketch of Byrd.**—Byrd was himself a man of great wealth and liberal education. He owned the land upon which Richmond now stands, and himself surveyed and laid out the city. He was appointed by the king one of the commissioners to survey and mark the boundary line between Virginia and North Carolina, and his report of his services there is most entertainingly written.

**The Huguenots.**—By this time the Huguenots had come to Virginia, and had made their principal settlement at Manakin Town, on the upper James, though others were scattered through the colony. These were French Protestants who were forced to fly from their native land to escape the persecutions of the King of France because of their religion.

**Their Character.**—In their ranks were some of the noblest Frenchmen of that day, as well as thousands of honest, God-fearing, law-abiding citizens and artisans, skilled in every department of labor. It was an evil day for France when they were driven from their homes, and it was a fortunate one for Virginia when they landed on her shores.

**The Scotch-Irish.**—New settlers were now pouring into the colony on every side. In the Valley a large colony of Scotch-Irish had settled. Like the Huguenots, they were refugees from persecution, having been driven from Ireland by the English to dwell afterwards in harmony with them here, for French and German, English, Scotch and Irish alike helped to build up the great Commonwealth we love and honor to-day.

**The Origin of the Virginians.**—It is very often said, and with pride by some, that we Virginians are English people. It is true that the little band of adventurers who first landed in Virginia were English, but in 300 years many changes have been wrought by diversity of climate and other natural causes, and by the accessions to our population of other nationalities, so that to-day there are perhaps more Virginians of Scotch-Irish, German and

French descent than of English. There is nothing of English left in the Virginian of to-day save the pure English language, which we write and speak at least as well as the English do. In the light of history, it is difficult to discover why any good Virginian should be vain of his English ancestry, and it is in bad taste, at least, to wear about one's person "coats of arms" or "crests" of old English houses, especially when nobody knows what they may mean—not even he who wears them. Heraldry had its uses in its day, but that is long past, and now it is a lost science—not even understood as to its uses in its day.

**"The Virginia Gazette"—Methodism.**—In 1736 the first newspaper, *The Virginia Gazette*, was published at Williamsburg, and four years later Methodism appeared in the State through the efforts of the great evangelist, George Whitefield, who, with his friend, John Wesley, had come to America to preach salvation to all. Wesley went to Georgia, where he attracted widespread interest and attention, and Whitefield's eloquence at Williamsburg sowed the seeds of the Methodist faith which has endured and grown into one of our greatest churches.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What about the colony at the close of the century?
2. What college was founded, and when?
3. Who was its projector?
4. Who the architect?
5. What other building did he erect?
6. What is said of the college?
7. Who succeeded William and Mary, and when?
8. What is she called?
9. How has her name been perpetuated in Virginia?
10. In what was she interested, and what were some of her gifts?
11. Who became governor of Virginia in 1710?
12. Mention some of his enterprises.
13. Tell of the Knights of the Golden Horseshoe.
14. Who was Blackbeard, and what can you tell of him?
15. Where did Governor Spotswood live?
16. Who visited him there?
17. Tell about Byrd.
18. Who were the Huguenots?
19. Why did they leave France?
20. What kind of people were they?

21. Who were the Scotch-Irish, and where did they settle?
22. What people united to build up Virginia?
23. When and where was the first newspaper established?
24. What great preacher came to Virginia and sowed the seeds from which a great denomination has sprung?
25. What other people besides the English settled in Virginia?



## CHAPTER XIV.\*

THE CHARACTER OF THE POPULATION—EMPLOYMENTS AND CONDITION OF THE PEOPLE IN COLONIAL TIMES.

**The First Settlers.**—The first colonists were officers and servants of the London Company, and were shareholders in the enterprise, having bartered their services for a term of years in exchange for a share in its profits, and Smith complained that too many were gentlemen. Up to the time of Sir Thomas Dale the product of their labor constituted a common stock, to which all looked for support, and their main dependence for food was on the supplies brought from England or upon the grain and vegetables obtained from the Indians. Dale, as has been elsewhere stated, granted to those of the colonists who had been longest in the colony and shown themselves most deserving three acres of land, which they held as tenants of the company, subject to the payment of a small yearly rent and one month's labor for the common store. In 1619, an eventful year in Virginia history, the agreement of the company with the first settlers was carried out by Yeardley, and a certain quantity of land was assigned, in fee, to each servant of the company who had served the time agreed upon, which proved even a greater stimulus to individual industry and energy than the tenant system of Dale, and henceforward the colony became self-sustaining. Two more classes were thus added to the population—the tenants of the company (or farmers) and the landowners.

**Servants.**—These two classes soon began to acquire white servants, who were known as indentured servants—that is, they were bound by written agreements, called

\* For many of the statements made in this and the succeeding chapter the author is indebted to the admirable work of Philip A. Bruce, "An Economic History of Virginia in the Seventeenth Century."

indentures, to serve for a specified time—and, as you have seen, in 1619 twenty negro slaves were imported into the colony. The word servant in that day did not imply the same as in ours, for it was used of domestic, agricultural and mechanical laborers under indentures, of apprentices bound out to learn trades, and of those seeking a knowledge of the learned professions in a doctor's shop\* or lawyer's office, nor did it necessarily show that those who were so called were of humble origin, though the great body of them came from the laboring or industrial or middle class of the mother country, who, to escape the hard conditions surrounding them in England, were willing to part with their freedom for a term of years to reach the new fields which Virginia offered. Some of them were persons of education and were employed in clerical and other capacities. Poor children were also bound out as laborers, or apprentices, and from the time of the Commonwealth political offenders were sent over to be sold for a specified time, and on more than one occasion persons convicted of crime under the bloody criminal code of England, which then punished 300 offences with death, were, to mitigate the rigors of the law, ordered to be transported to the colonies; but this was soon checked by the protests of the Company and of the colonists as prejudicial to the good name of the settlement, and was finally prohibited by law. Many of these indentured servants at the expiration of their terms acquired lands, such a stipulation being often contained in their agreements, and were in after years among the most prominent citizens in wealth and position. From 1630 to 1654 the House of Burgesses contained many members who had come into the colony as indentured servants. The constant and increasing demand for labor, as well as the premium of fifty acres of land given for each person brought into the colony, caused this class to increase very rapidly. In 1625, the year after the dissolution of the London Com-

\* The doctors of that day compounded their own medicines and filled their own prescriptions. They consequently kept on hand a considerable stock of drugs, and the place in which they were kept was called a "shop."

pany, the number of indentured servants was 464, and of negro slaves twenty-two. In 1671 the former had increased to 6,000, the latter to 2,000. White female servants were almost universally employed as domestics, while the men who were not mechanics and artisans, together with the negroes of both sexes, were employed in agriculture. Indians taken in war could also be held as servants for a limited time, but one of Bacon's laws, which was continued, enacted that they should become slaves for life, and in 1682 this was extended to Indians purchased or brought into the colony from a distance by traders, but the number of Indian servants does not at any time appear to have been large.

**Overseers.**—The introduction of a large number of servants and of negro slaves created a demand for the services of another class called overseers. The larger proprietors frequently owned tracts of land widely separated from each other, to which they could not give their personal attention, and had therefore to employ others for that purpose. Sometimes the management would be entrusted to one of the indentured servants, but more frequently servants whose time had expired or freemen were employed, and were paid by giving them a certain share in the crop. The opportunity for these overseers to accumulate property was good, and their accumulations were often invested in servants whom they hired to their employer or to some other planter until the head rights thus acquired enabled them to purchase land of their own, and a very large proportion of them became proprietors. Their sons when they grew up often adopted the business their fathers had successfully followed, and so, to some extent, a class grew up.

**Free Negroes.**—Before the close of the seventeenth century there were a number of free negroes in the colony, some of whom were land owners, but the great body were indentured or hired servants. These, during that century and the first quarter of the eighteenth, enjoyed the right of suffrage, which was bestowed upon all freemen, but in 1723

this right was restricted, and free negroes, mulattoes and Indians were excluded from the suffrage. The free negroes, though landowners, were always prohibited from employing white indentured servants, but could employ Indians or persons of their own race. In 1699 a law was passed requiring every African freeman to leave the colony within six months after his emancipation, so that the increase of this class was to some extent checked.

**Mechanics.**—Mechanics were either indentured or free, and, owing to the demand for this class of laborers, important privileges were bestowed on them. They were not required to engage in agriculture, as were all other persons, and at a later period were exempted from the payment of levies except church levies. There being no metallic money in circulation, the payment for their services was made in tobacco. The length of time they had to wait for their compensation had a discouraging effect and many of them preferred engaging in agriculture as affording a more regular and substantial support than could be obtained by following their trades.

**The Cavaliers.**—During the twelve years succeeding the execution of King Charles I., it is estimated that 25,000 of the royalist officers and soldiers fled to Virginia. Many of these were of the English gentry, who hated or feared the government of Cromwell. While some had wealth and rank, others were impoverished by the results of the war, or were younger sons without estates, but of as good blood as their wealthier companions, and from them many Virginia families of to-day are descended. These brought with them the tastes and habits of the class to which they belonged and exerted a potent influence upon the social life of the colony.

**Wealth.**—There was little individual wealth in the colony prior to the middle of the seventeenth century. Most of the large landed estates grew up after that time and were acquired by patents granted for the importation of persons into the colony, except in the Northern Neck, where lands were obtained by purchase from the lords' proprie-

tors or their successors, to whom they were granted by Charles II., in 1661, and some were acquired under Indian grants, though the rights of the Indians were little regarded and their holdings persistently encroached upon. Many of the large proprietors were also merchants, and derived no inconsiderable part of their wealth from this source. There were few paupers, and Beverley mentions an instance in which a bequest for the benefit of the poor in one of the parishes remained untouched for nine years because there were none who came within its terms.

**Agriculture.**—The chief business of the people was the cultivation of the soil. The forests had to be cleared and the ground prepared for the planting of the crop. This labor was at first performed exclusively by hand, the axe and the hoe being the chief implements. Eleven years after the settlement there was but one plough in the colony, and the estimated number was but one hundred and fifty in 1649, when the population was 15,000 whites and 300 slaves.

**Products.**—The principal products were the maize or Indian corn, found here on the discovery of the country, which the Indians taught them how to plant and cultivate; wheat, oats, barley, hops, potatoes, turnips, carrots, parsnips, onions, Indian peas, and beans. Rice, indigo, flax, hemp, and cotton were also produced, but never became staples, except that the latter came to be very generally cultivated in quantities sufficient to meet home requirements, a practice continued as late as the middle of the nineteenth century, and it is still produced in considerable quantities in portions of Southside Virginia. Various attempts were made to produce silk and wine, but with little success. Apples, peaches, pears, apricots, cherries, plums, quinces, and other fruits were raised in abundance, while strawberries, blackberries, and whortleberries, hazel-nuts, hickory-nuts, and Indian walnuts grew wild in the fields and forests. Tobacco was, however, the principal and most important product of the colony after 1616, and was the principal currency and medium of

exchange; debts, public and private, wages, salaries, and contracts of every kind were made payable in tobacco. Metallic money was little used and but rarely seen until towards the close of the seventeenth century, and was then employed to but a limited extent. The production of tobacco was encouraged and regulated by law, and in 1720 the Virginia crop of prime tobacco was reported at 58,000 hogsheads; only the best quality was permitted to be shipped, the lugs and inferior grades being burned in the king's pound. The price fluctuated greatly, and the planters complained loudly of the unprofitableness of the crop.

**Live Stock.**—Hogs and goats were early imported into the colony, and increased rapidly owing to the excellent range and the abundance of food, but were nearly, if not entirely, exterminated during the memorable "Starving Time." Under the judicious arrangements of Dale for their protection, the live stock multiplied rapidly, so that at the beginning of Argall's administration there were eighty-eight goats, 128 kine, and hogs in great numbers. The depredations of Argall greatly reduced the supply, but in 1649 there were 5,000 goats, a much larger number of swine, both domestic and wild, and 20,000 cattle; the horses, however, numbered only 200. Towards the close of the century hogs were so numerous that frequently the number is not stated in the inventories of estates, and the number of wild hogs, wild cattle, and wild horses was so great that hunting them afforded both amusement and profit. Pork and beef were exported to New England and Barbadoes, and cattle to the former, and the bacon of Virginia was regarded as equal to that of Westphalia. Sheep were not common until towards the close of the seventeenth century, the depredations of wolves confining them chiefly to the older settlements, though as early as 1649 there were 3,000 in the colony. Poultry were numerous from an early period, and formed a principal article of diet among all classes.

## QUESTIONS.

1. What was the relation of the first settlers to the Company ?
2. What can you tell of the labor system ?
3. What important change was made by Dale ?
4. By whom and where were the first lands granted to settlers in fee ?
5. What was the effect ?
6. What two classes were added to the population ?
7. What classes of servants were introduced into the colony ?
8. How were the different classes employed ?
9. What was the condition of free negroes in the colony ?
10. What is said about mechanics ?
11. Tell of the wealth of the colony and how it was obtained ; of paupers.
12. What class of immigrants came during the time of the Commonwealth ?
13. What was the principal employment of the people and how was it carried on ?
14. Tell what were the principal products. Of tobacco.
15. What live stock had they ?
16. What was the number in 1649 ?
17. What circumstances show the increase towards the close of the century ?
18. What were some of the exports ?

## CHAPTER XV.

## THE EMPLOYMENTS AND CONDITION OF THE PEOPLE—CONTINUED.

**Buildings.**—The houses of the first settlers were rude huts, built of round logs, the roofs of split boards, and were without floors. The chimneys were of the same material as the building, protected by fire-backs of clay, with



THE PINES, NEW KENT COUNTY, WHERE JEFFERSON WAS MARRIED.

which the entire building was usually daubed inside and out for protection against the weather. These later gave place to houses of hewed or sawed logs, sometimes weather-boarded and ceiled, and to frame buildings. The latter was the typical residence of the Virginia planter throughout the colonial period, notwithstanding the repeated



efforts on the part of the government to induce the construction of more substantial buildings. Brickmakers and bricklayers were early brought into the colony, but houses of this material seem to have been rare during the seventeenth century.\* The first story of all the houses erected

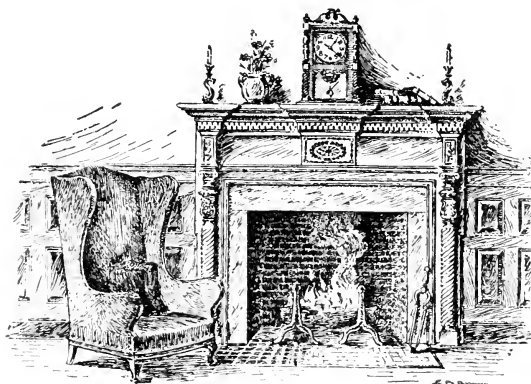


OLD HOUSE AT MALVERN HILL.

by Dale, at Henrico, was of brick, and there were brick buildings at Jamestown forty years after the settlement, but they were not common as late as the administration of Spotswood. The frame buildings were built with or without cellars and brick foundations, a story-and-a-half or two stories high, with a brick chimney at one or both

\*It was long believed that the brick of which the churches and large residences were built was brought from England as ballast in the returning tobacco ships, but it is now pretty well settled that they were made here. The ships were fully freighted with goods and luxuries for the planters, and the bricks were called "English brick," because they were like those made in England, and there was a natural disposition to call anything English that was of superior quality. Thus our Virginia mocking-bird was called the English mocking, though there was no such bird in England, while the brown thrush was called the sandy or French mocking bird.

ends; and additions were made to them, as necessity required. With the increase of wealth in the eighteenth century the larger planters began to build on their princely estates elegant brick mansions, resembling those of the English gentry at home, two stories or more high, with deep cellars, spacious rooms, broad halls, great chimneys and wide fireplaces. They were often almost square, with inside chimneys, which heated both the halls and apartments, and often had wings of the same material, connected with the main building by covered-ways or arcades, containing kitchen and buttery, steward's, house-keeper's and domestic servants' quarters. The rooms and halls of the "great house" were wainscotted and panelled with costly woods from the floor to the elaborately carved cornices of the same material surrounding the ceiling.

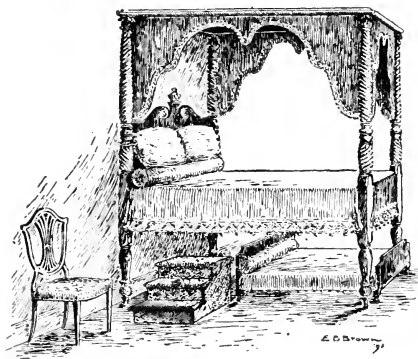


OLD COLONIAL MANTEL, FROM THE HOME OF DANIEL MORGAN.

The stairways were broad and protected by heavy turned balusters capped by broad mahogany hand-rails. The walls were adorned with large and costly mirrors and sometimes with tapestry.

The interior of framed buildings was often finished in the same way but in the native woods. The lawns in front were ornamented with trees and shrubs, and often broad avenues, bordered by gigantic oaks, led to the dwelling, which was rarely situated close to the public highway, but at varying distances ranging from three or four hundred yards to a mile or more, though they were often erected near the navigable streams. Some of these colonial residences

of Tidewater Virginia stand to-day in evidence of the luxury, style and dignity of the colonial gentry. The

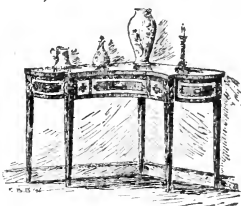


ANTIQUE BEDSTEAD.

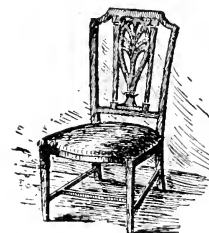
overseer's and servants' quarters usually formed a distinct settlement some distance from the "great house."

**Furniture.**—The furniture, with few exceptions, being imported, differed little from that of persons in the same pecuniary condition in the mother country. Among the well-to-do classes, the bedsteads,

tables, chairs, desks, drawers, sideboards, etc., were of solid mahogany, or some of it was veneered, thin strips of mahogany being used to cover less costly woods. Plates and dishes were commonly of pewter, sometimes of earthenware, and wooden plates

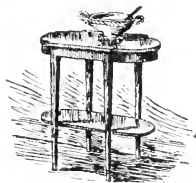


ANTIQUE TABLE.



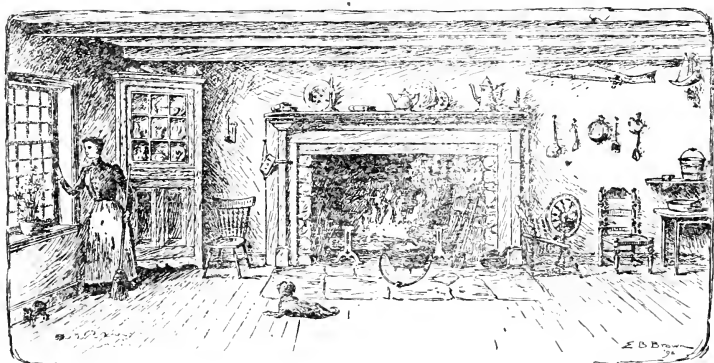
ANTIQUE CHAIR.

and trenchers were used by the poor. Cups, mugs, tumblers, tankards, salt cellars were of pewter, and cups of horn were sometimes used. Spoons were of pewter and alchemy. Even among those of moderate means many of these vessels were of silver, and among the wealthy, plates, dishes, candlesticks, snuffers and spoons were of the same material. Knives were of steel with silver handles for the rich, but of cheaper material, for others. Forks were not in general use at the close of the seventeenth century. The kitchen utensils were of



ANTIQUE STAND.

brass, tin, pewter, iron, earthenware and wood. Large iron pots were swung on movable racks firmly fixed in the chimney; gridirons, skillets, and spits of iron, pans of tin or earthenware, chafing-dishes of brass, wooden trays, tubs, piggins, noggins, etc., formed in part the equipment for the exercise of that culinary skill for which Virginia became famous. Baking-ovens were often of brick, and heated by fires built in an arch underneath connected with a flue or chimney. The dwellings were lighted by candles of myrtle wax, made from the berries of the myrtle, which grew in profusion, or made of deer



LIVING ROOM IN A COLONIAL HOME ABOUT THE MIDDLE OF THE 18TH CENTURY.

suet or beef tallow; lamps of brass and tin and tin lanterns were also used, and the resinous wood of the pine, popularly known as "light-wood," lighted many colonial homes, especially those of the poor. The forests afforded abundant fuel, and the wide fireplaces, filled with glowing logs of oak or hickory, dispensed a genial warmth in every home.

**Conveyances—Roads.**—In the seventeenth century much of the travel was by boats along the water-courses, or, if in the interior, on foot, or on horseback, but before the close of the century we find that coaches, chariots, chaises and running chairs, the latter probably the gig of a later period and the precursor of the modern sulky, had been in-

troduced. Sir William Berkeley owned a coach brought from London, and his successors, who, like their predecessors from Lord Delaware's day, surrounded themselves with the pomp and state of their high office and lived in vice-regal style in their palaces at Jamestown and Williamsburg, doubtless followed his example. Only a few very wealthy persons appear, however, to have indulged in such luxuries, and it was not until the first quarter of the eighteenth century that they began to come into general use even among the wealthier classes. The principal travel was on horseback, and this continued to be the chief mode of making long journeys even in the early part of the nineteenth century, especially if the journey extended into the mountainous regions. There were no roads in the colony at the time of the settlement except the Indian trails, leading from one village to another or to their hunting grounds, of which frequent mention is made in the old records as to well known landmarks. The cattle and other stock of the settlers were the first road-makers. These, in going out to and returning from pasturage, followed the easiest grades and least obstructed routes until they became well defined trails which the people followed in going from one plantation to another, and were gradually improved and widened to permit the passage of carts, tumbrils, coaches and other vehicles as these successively came into use.

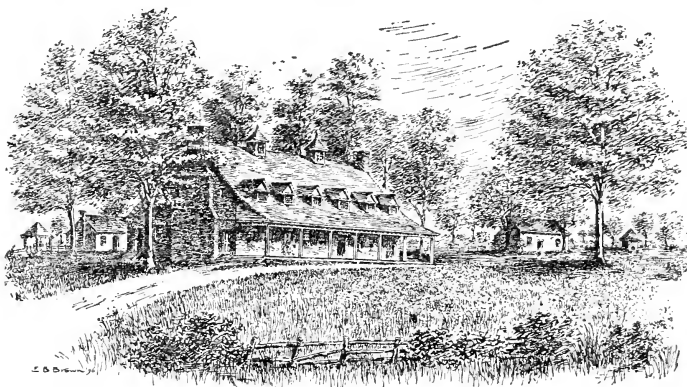
**Dress.**—The dress of the Virginians, like their furniture, was that of their English kinsmen of that day of like social station. Dress was one badge of rank and social position, and its distinctions were observed in the colony as in the mother country, though if Pory, the speaker of the first House of Burgesses, can be relied on, there was greater latitude in the new than in the old country, for he describes the cow-keeper at Jamestown as "accoutred in fresh, flaming silk," and the wife of a collier—a professor of the black art—as wearing "her rough beaver hat with fair pearl hat-band and a silken suit," though the rank of the cow-keeper may have entitled him to silk

“fresh” and “flaming,” and that of the collier’s wife called for her beaver headgear. That the Virginians were inclined to extravagance in dress, and, perhaps, to assume distinctions to which they were not entitled, is indicated by the act of 1619, assessing the unmarried according to their apparel, and married persons according to the clothing of themselves and the members of their family, and also by a law passed about the middle of the century prohibiting the importation of garments containing silk, and of silver, gold or bone lace, and ribbons wrought with gold or silver. Coats were of broadcloth, camlet, fustian, serge, cotton, kersey, frieze, canvas and buckskin with buttons of silk, thread, brass, pewter, stone and other materials. The greatcoat was of frieze, but on special occasions this was exchanged for a cloak of blue or scarlet cloth or of silk. The waistcoat of dimity, cotton or flannel, and in a variety of colors. The breeches of broadcloth, serge, linen or ticking; the shoes of ordinary leather or of the kind called French falls, with buckles of silver, steel or brass; the shirt of holland, blue linen, lockram, dowlas or canvas; the collar of linen or lace, and the neckcloth of blue linen, calico, dowlas, muslin or fine holland. The stockings were of silk, thread, woolen or cotton. The head was covered with a beaver, felt or straw hat or a monmouth cap. The dress of the women corresponded in quality to that of the men. Silk and flowered gowns, satin and linen bodices, lace waistcoats, petticoats of serge, flannel, silk and printed linen or dimity were worn. Scarfs of many hues were worn about the throat, and mantles of crimson taffeta over the shoulders. Colored hose, silk garters and laced or gallooned shoes, a bonnet, trimmed with lace, a palmetto hat or a satinet or calico hood and thread gloves, completed the outfit of the colonial belle. Woolen shoes and shoes with wooden heels were also worn.

**Food.**—All classes lived in abundance. To the products of the plantation was added the game of the forests and the streams. The woods abounded in deer and wild

turkeys, and even in wild hogs and wild cattle; autumn and winter brought innumerable wild water-fowl, swan, geese, and brant, and ducks in every variety; while the water teemed with the finest varieties of fish, as well as crabs, clams, and oysters. Beer, ale, cider, perry, peach and apple brandy were produced on every plantation, and rum, foreign wines and brandies imported. The use of these was much more common than at the present day, but stringent regulations were made for the punishment of drunkenness.

**Social and Domestic Life.**—Social life in Virginia was in its general outlines a reproduction of that of England



GREENWAY COURT, THE HOME OF LORD FAIRFAX, CLARKE COUNTY, VA.

during this period, modified by the difference of climate and the conditions surrounding settlers in a new and uncultivated country, who are threatened by the constant presence of an active and cruel foe. We find it portrayed in the private correspondence of the colonists, the official records of the burgesses, and other documents of unquestionable authority. The growing trade with the mother country made this proud and ambitious offshoot of the Norman-French and hardy Briton familiar with all that was occurring in social and in public life “at home,” for England was still “home” to the colonists, and regarded

with profound affection. Passengers and letters kept the Virginians posted as to the pastimes and field sports, and these were imitated in the colony. Dale, on his arrival at Jamestown on Sunday afternoon, found the colonists playing bowls, after service, as they were accustomed to do in England. The time of the wealthy planter was occupied in superintending his estates, the execution of details being left to an overseer or manager; in attending to public affairs as a member of the council, of the House of Burgesses, as one of the justices of the peace of his county, or as a commissioned officer of the militia; in the performance of his social duties, or in amusement or in the study of the few books and papers then to be had. His wife managed the affairs of the household, supervised cooks, house-servants, gardeners, spinners, and weavers, looked after the sick and infirm, and acted as hostess at the frequent social entertainments. The smaller proprietors, except that their houses were not so large or so handsomely furnished, that they had fewer slaves and domestics, purchased fewer luxuries, and were not so richly attired, lived very much as did their wealthier neighbors. Not having so many public duties to discharge, more of their time was given to the plantation, which they often managed in person, and when the servants or slaves were few, their wives and daughters performed a larger part of the household duties. The men shared the field sports of their richer neighbors, hunted, fished, and boated together, for which the Chesapeake Bay and its affluents afforded unequalled facilities, and were their comrades in the frequent Indian wars, where they learned to know and depend upon each other, so that nowhere were the relations between rich and poor more cordial and friendly, notwithstanding the distinctions created by wealth and official position. Plantation life fostered individuality and the spirit of independence discouraged co-operation and rendered each separate plantation a community, with interests and employments distinct from its neighbors, producing a race of brave, hardy, self-reliant men, trained to



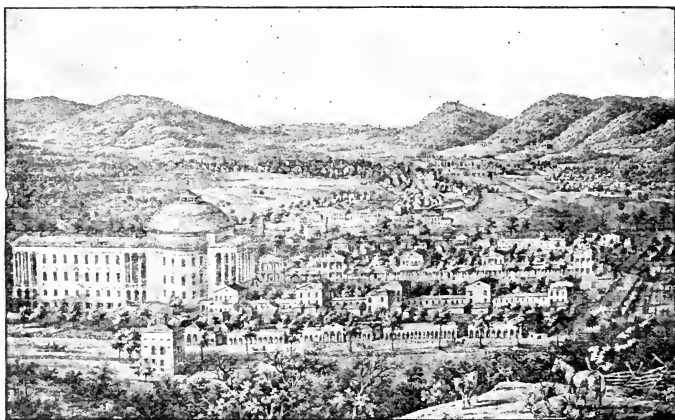
the management of affairs, of whom so many examples appeared during the Revolutionary period, as well as in subsequent periods of the country's history.

**Their Amusements.**—Fox-hunting, fowling, fishing, cock-fighting, horse-racing, bowls, and other games were the planter's out-door sports; music, dancing, cards, backgammon, &c., his in-door amusements. In the last quarter of the seventeenth century, when the English began to import stock for the improvement of the native horse and racing became fashionable, the passion early spread to Virginia. Horses of the best English blood were soon to be found in the planters' stables; English fox-hounds and imported setters and pointers in their kennels. The passion for fine horses and field-sports has always been one of the characteristics of the Virginians, which the changed conditions of the present have not yet been able to up-root.

**Entail and Primogeniture.**—The English laws of entail and primogeniture prevailed. Under the former lands descended to the heirs of a certain line; under the latter to the eldest son. So that these great landed estates were often kept together, but the old wills show that in many cases lands were distributed at the pleasure of the owner among his children. At the time of the Revolution, through the efforts of Mr. Jefferson, these laws were abolished, and lands, like other property, were distributed among the children of the owner in equal shares.

**Education.**—Education early received attention. Governor Dale in the early years of the colony attempted to establish schools for all children, but it was then premature. The population was too much dispersed and the colony too poor at that time for the expenditure of the money necessary. Some of the planters employed private tutors in their families, who taught not only their own children but those of their neighbors. Boys, and sometimes girls, were sent to England to school, and young men finished their education in that country. We find frequent provision made in wills in the seventeenth

century for the education of the children of the testator. That Virginia, even in colonial times, was abreast of her sister colonies in the matter of education is shown by the number of public men she produced, who were the leaders of thought and who shaped both the State and Continental legislation during the Revolutionary period, and subsequently laid the foundations of the republic. Washington, Henry, Mason, Jefferson, Monroe, Marshall, Pendleton, the Lees and their associates were not the product of an ignorant and illiterate people.



UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA, ESTABLISHED 1825.

**Colleges and Schools.**—As we have seen, near the close of the seventeenth century the Rev. Dr. Blair succeeded in establishing the College of William and Mary at Williamsburg, to be followed later by the numerous schools and colleges which have contributed so greatly to the advancement of the educational interests of Virginia and the South; among these may be named Liberty Hall Academy (now Washington and Lee University), Hampden-Sidney, Randolph-Macon, Emory and Henry, Roanoke College, Richmond College, Virginia Military Institute, and the University of Virginia, the greatest work of

the great Jefferson; so that, in 1860, in no other State or country of the world, save Prussia, had so large a proportion of the population enjoyed the advantages of a collegiate education as in Virginia.

## QUESTIONS.

1. How were the houses of the first settlers built?
2. What kind of house was usual in Virginia in the seventeenth century?
3. When were the first brick houses built? When did they begin to become somewhat numerous?
4. Can you describe the houses of some of the wealthy planters?
5. Tell about their furniture.
6. How were their houses lighted?
7. What conveyances had they, and how were the first roads laid out?
8. How did they travel?
9. What can you tell of the dress of the colonists? Of the material used for various articles of clothing?
10. What is said about food?
11. How were the colonists kept informed of what was occurring in England?
12. What employments had the wealthy planter? How was his wife employed?
13. What is said of the smaller proprietors?
14. What effect had plantation life on the people?
15. Tell of some of the sports of the period.
16. What is said about education?
17. When and by whom was William and Mary College founded?

SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

---

- CHAPTER XIII.—The Close of the Century.  
William and Mary College.  
Sir Christopher Wren.  
The College Destroyed.  
“ Good Queen Anne.”  
Governor Spotswood.  
Indian School.  
Expedition to the Valley.  
The Knights of the Golden Horseshoe.  
Blackbeard.  
Death of Blackbeard.  
Colonel William Byrd’s Visit to Germanna.  
Sketch of Byrd.  
The Huguenots.  
Their Character.  
The Scotch-Irish.  
The *Virginia Gazette*—Methodism.  
The Origin of the Virginians.
- CHAPTER XIV.—The First Settlers.  
Servants.  
Overseers.  
Free Negroes.  
Mechanics.  
The Cavaliers.  
Wealth.  
Agriculture.  
Products.  
Live Stock.
- CHAPTER XV.—Buildings.  
Furniture.  
Conveyances—Roads.  
Dress.  
Social and Domestic Life.  
Their Amusements.  
Education.

## CHAPTER XVI.

GEORGE WASHINGTON—HIS BOYHOOD—SURVEYOR FOR LORD FAIRFAX—MISSION TO THE FRENCH—IN COMMAND OF THE VIRGINIA TROOPS—AIDE TO GENERAL BRADDOCK—PATRICK HENRY—THE PARSONS' CASE—THE STAMP ACT.

**George Washington.**—On February 22d, 1732, a boy was born at Wakefield, near Pope's Creek, in Westmoreland county, whose name was to take the highest place in history. This was George Washington. His father died when he was twelve years old, and George and his mother lived in Stafford county just across the river from Fredericksburg, where his parents had removed, when George was about five years old, after the destruction of their home in Westmoreland by fire; but much of his early life was spent at Mount Vernon, the home of his half-brother, Lawrence Washington, who was also his guardian. Lawrence had already seen service under Admiral Vernon of the English navy, for whom he named his plantation on the Potomac.

**Appointment in British Navy.**—It was at first decided that George should enter the navy, and his brother obtained an appointment for him, but his mother could not consent to be so far separated from him, so the plan was abandoned.

**Employed as a Surveyor.**—Lawrence Washington had married a kinswoman of Lord Fairfax, who was then living in Virginia where he owned large grants of land, and

George was employed to survey these lands. He had not had many opportunities for obtaining an education, but



WASHINGTON'S SURVEYING QUARTERS AT  
SOLDIER'S REST.

he was fond of mathematics, and worked hard to perfect himself in it, so that at the age of sixteen he was able to perform satisfactorily the duties of a surveyor.

**Appointed Adjutant-General—Mission to the French.**—

He spent some years in this work, and he must have



MT. VERNON, THE HOME OF WASHINGTON.

already given promise of ability and high character, for he was appointed Adjutant-General of the northern district of Virginia, and in 1753 was sent by Governor Dinwiddie to protest against the French encroachments beyond the Ohio River.

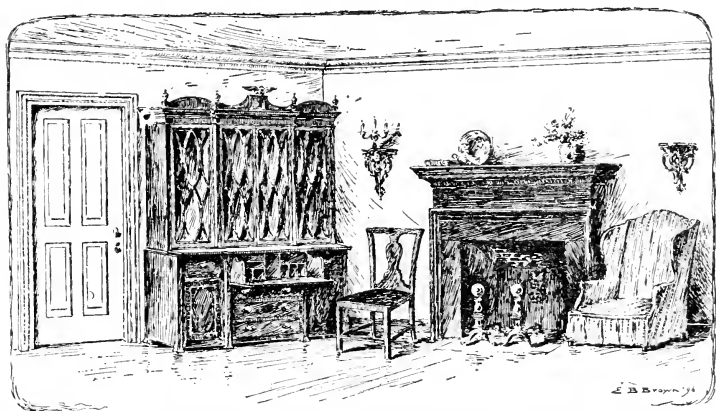
**French Encroachments.**—France claimed all the territory west of the Alleghanies, from the Great Lakes to the mouth of the Mississippi, which England insisted belonged to her. The French were rapidly pushing southward from Canada, and Washington was sent to bear England's protest against their taking possession of this territory.

**The Result of His Mission.**—He encountered many hardships and perils by the way, having been once fired at by a treacherous Indian, and on another occasion narrowly escaped drowning. The French commander, Monsieur Le Gardeur de St. Pierre, received him courteously, but declined to yield one foot of ground, and with this unsatisfactory answer he was obliged to return to Williamsburg.

**Placed in Command.**—The next year a force was sent out against the French, and Washington placed in command; but the expedition accomplished little, being outnumbered and defeated. Within twelve months, however, a new attempt was made by England.

**Braddock's Expedition.**—In 1755 General Braddock, with one thousand British regulars, was sent to Virginia for this purpose, and to these were added as many Americans. Braddock invited Major Washington to become a member of his staff, and he accompanied the expedition as an aide to the general. Braddock was a brave soldier, but he was ignorant of the methods of Indian warfare, and was besides obstinate and hot tempered, and unwilling to take advice from any one.

**Defeat of Braddock.**—His army was surprised near Fort Duquesne, on the Monongahela River, and cut to pieces by the French and their Indian allies. Braddock



WASHINGTON'S ROOM AT MT. VERNON, SKETCHED AUGUST 19, 1896.\*

himself was killed and the remnant of his panic stricken regulars was saved by the gallantry of the Virginia troops, led by Washington, who, accustomed to Indian warfare, covered their retreat until they found shelter within the Virginia frontier.

**Washington Again in Command.**—The fury of the savages, incited by the French, now fell upon the helpless settlers and murder raged along the border. Washington was placed in command of the Virginia forces, and remained

\* Armed chair in which he last sat, in National Museum.

at his post until the end of the French and Indian war, in 1763, when, by the treaty of peace, France ceded to England all her possessions in America. He then returned to Mount Vernon, which he had inherited from his brother Lawrence. From the quiet of his fireside he was later to be called to unsheath his sword not only for Virginia, but for all her sister colonies.

**Patrick Henry.**—Meanwhile another young Virginian was to wield a mighty influence upon the opinions and events of the day. This was Patrick Henry, who has been called the “Father of the American Revolution.”



PATRICK HENRY.

**His Education and Early Life.**—He was the son of Colonel John Henry, who lived at his place, Studley, in Hanover county, where Patrick Henry was born in 1736. He never attended college, but his father instructed him in Latin and English, and in the former he was proficient. He pos-

sessed no turn for business, and after failing in more than one enterprise decided to study law. He was careless in his dress and ungainly in his person, and in nothing gave promise of the ability and eloquence which were to make him a power in the land.

**The Parsons' Case.**—Henry was nearly thirty when the opportunity came by which his name was first known. The salaries of the clergymen of the established church in Virginia had always been paid in tobacco, 16,000 pounds each year being the quantity. It happened that the crop of one year was a failure, and the burgesses passed a law that all debts might be paid in money at the rate of twopence a pound for tobacco. The clergymen who had been getting sixpence a pound appealed to the king, who decided that the burgesses had no right to make such a law. It was determined to make a test case, and the Rev. Mr. Maury, a minister of the established church, of Huguenot descent, brought suit to recover what was due him. The law was on his side, but there



were many who disapproved of the law, and Patrick Henry was employed against the clergy. He had never before spoken in public, and he was so overwhelmed with confusion that his voice at first could scarcely be heard. Suddenly he recovered his self-possession, and lifting his head spoke in earnest and strong disapproval of the clergy and of the king who sustained them. Some one cried "Treason," and the excitement became intense.



HANOVER COURT-HOUSE, WHERE HENRY MADE HIS CELEBRATED SPEECH IN  
THE PARSONS' CAUSE.

The jury, after being out five minutes, practically decided against the clergymen, and the crowd, lifting Henry on their shoulders, bore him in triumph from the room. So ended the famous "Parsons' Cause." Famous only because a young Virginia lawyer had defied the crown of England, and had eloquently declared that the burgesses should be obeyed before the king himself. The question was soon to be considered again in another form.

**King George III.**—With the death of Queen Anne the last of the Stuarts had gone from the throne of England,

and the House of Brunswick now occupied the throne. These German sovereigns knew little about Virginia and cared less. Prince George, the third of that name, had become king under the title of George III.

**The Stamp Act.**—Charles II. had declared that no taxes should be laid on the colony, save with the consent of the burgesses. George III. now commanded that no business paper should be legal unless written on paper stamped by the crown. This paper was sold in the colonies and the money went to the king. This act was known as the “Stamp Act,” and was the first step towards the Revolution.

**Resolutions of the House of Burgesses.**—When the House of Burgesses met in 1765, the first question they had to settle was whether or not Virginia would buy the stamped paper. The issue was a very grave one, and its discussion long and earnest. Patrick Henry was now a member of the burgesses, having been elected from Louisa County. Rising in his place, he offered his celebrated resolutions denying the right of the British Parliament to tax the colony, and vigorously opposed submission. In ending his speech he said, “Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III.”—when he was interrupted by cries of “Treason!” “Treason.” The speaker paused, then raising himself to his full height, added, “may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it.” Great confusion prevailed in the chamber. Some cheered him and some cried “Treason!” but in the end his resolutions were carried, and Virginia declared she would not submit to the “Stamp Act.” Virginia gave the signal to the continent, to which the other colonies quickly responded.

**Repeal of the Act.**—The king now realized that he must either repeal the objectionable measure or declare war on the colony; and in 1766 the act was repealed. But other and equally tyrannical measures were soon to follow. This was the beginning and not the end of the trouble.

## QUESTIONS.

1. Tell about Washington's birth and boyhood.
2. Why did he not enter the British navy?
3. How was he first employed?
4. On what mission was he sent, and by whom?
5. Why was this necessary?
6. What of his journey, and what was his success?
7. What appointment did he next receive?
8. Tell about General Braddock and his army.
9. What happened to it?
10. To what command was Washington then assigned?
11. What other young Virginian, destined to wield great influence, is mentioned?
12. Tell of his birth, boyhood and early life.
13. What brought him into notice?
14. What was the "Parsons' Cause"?
15. Tell the result.
16. Why is it so famous?
17. Who was now king of England?
18. What was the Stamp Act?
19. Tell what occurred in the Virginia House of Burgesses.
20. What has Henry been called?
21. What did the king do?

## CHAPTER XVII.

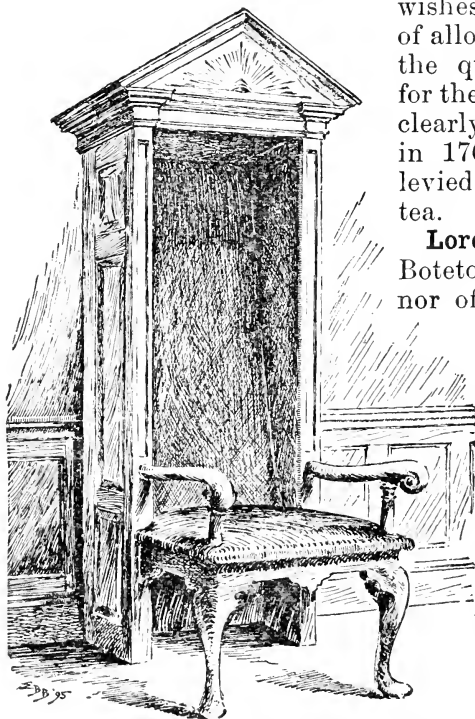
RESISTANCE TO PARLIAMENTARY TAXATION—NON-IMPORTATION RESOLUTIONS—  
THE FIRST CONGRESS—GEORGE MASON—ANDREW LEWIS.

**New Duties Laid.**—In repealing the Stamp Act the English government had no intention of yielding to the wishes of the colonies, nor of allowing them to decide the question of taxation for themselves, as they had clearly the right to do, and in 1767 a new duty was levied on glass, paper and tea.

**Lord Botetourt.**—Lord Botetourt was now governor of Virginia, and was very popular with all classes of people. His sympathies were with the Virginians, but as an officer of the crown he must do his duty.

**Virginians to be Carried to England for Trial.**—In addition to the new taxes, Parliament had urged the king to command that any person accused of treason in Vir-

ginia should be arrested and brought to England for trial, which meant that he would be dealt with accord-



SPEAKER'S CHAIR OF HOUSE OF BURGESSES, 1700.

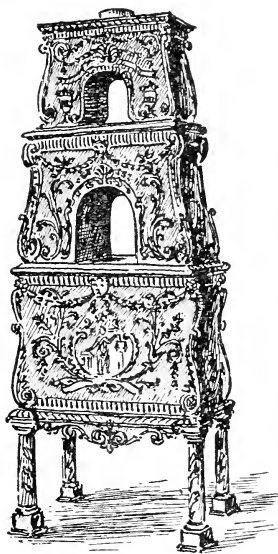
ing to the king's pleasure, and no man could hope for fair treatment under such circumstances.

**Action of the Burgesses—House Dissolved.**—When the burgesses met they declared that no Virginian should be carried to England to be tried; that no one should levy any taxes in Virginia save the representatives of the people themselves, and that a copy of these resolutions should be sent to all the other colonies. When Governor Boteourt heard of these measures it became his duty to dissolve the House of Burgesses, and he accordingly did so.

**Non-Importation Resolutions.**—But instead of separating and going to their homes, the members re-assembled at the Raleigh Tavern, in Williamsburg, where further resolutions were drawn up by George Mason, stating that the colonists would not purchase anything more from England or have any dealings with her until their wrongs were redressed. Mounted men took copies of these resolutions and rode with them north, south, east and west. Throughout Virginia and everywhere people endorsed and signed them.

**Duties Repealed Except on Tea.** For the second time the government of England, seeing the danger of the crisis, forbore to force the issue, and all duties save that on tea were repealed. But in the following spring (1773) Parliament announced again its intention of bringing the Virginians to England for trial, and again the House of Burgesses promptly protested.

**Committee of Correspondence.**—It was now decided that if the Americans meant to accomplish anything they



OLD STOVE—STATE CAPITOL.  
1770.

must act together, and a committee was appointed by the House of Burgesses, on the motion of Dabney Carr, to communicate with all the other colonies on matters pertaining to the general welfare. Patrick Henry and Richard Henry Lee supported the measure, which met with favor in the other colonies, and thenceforth they acted together. Patrick Henry and Thomas Jefferson were members of this committee.

**Death of Botetourt.**—Lord Botetourt had died in 1770, lamented and honored by the Virginians, who erected a monument to his memory, which now stands on the college grounds at Williamsburg, having been removed to its present site from the front of the old capitol, and named a county in honor of him as well.

**Lord Dunmore, Governor.**—Lord Dunmore, who had succeeded him, was the worst man possible for the place he was to fill. As soon as he learned of the action of the House of Burgesses he promptly dissolved it; but the blow had been struck. When the news reached England it aroused great excitement, for the home government realized that henceforth the colonies meant to stand side by side in the coming struggle. They would fight, if fight they must, together.

**British Troops Occupy Boston.**—Meanwhile, elsewhere as well as in Virginia, the spirit of freedom and revolt against tyranny was awakened. Boston had been so outspoken that the town was already garrisoned with British soldiers, and England now selected this point for her first determined effort against the colonies.

**"The Boston Tea Party."**—The import tax on tea, as has been stated, had never been repealed, and a cargo was now shipped to Boston free of the export duty charged in England; the price was, therefore, lowered to that extent, and it was hoped that the people would either suppose the import duty had been taken off or else, finding it so cheap, would reconsider their determination not to buy anything of England, and would purchase it. The Bostonians acted promptly. The ships were no sooner in

the harbor than a band of citizens, disguised as Indians, boarded them and tossed the cargo overboard. As soon as the news of this *outspoken* act reached England, the Parliament declared the port of Boston closed, and trade with the town was forbidden. This act is called "the Boston Port Bill."

**The News Sent Out.**—But the Bostonians had not been idle. Couriers were sent in every direction to carry the tidings of what has been called the "Great Boston Tea Party" to the other colonies.

**Action of Other States.**—At Annapolis, in Maryland, the people compelled the owner of a vessel, which had brought a consignment of tea, to take his vessel out into the harbor and burn her in broad daylight; and at Wilmington, North Carolina, the tea-ship was boarded in open day and the cargo destroyed; in Charleston, South Carolina, it was stored in damp cellars, where it spoiled.

**Resolutions of Burgesses.**—In Virginia, the burgesses passed resolutions urging the people not to buy or use tea, and calling for a congress of all the colonies to consider the situation. Massachusetts had already taken the same course.

**A Solemn Fast.**—The first of June (1774) was set apart as a day of solemn fasting and prayer, and everywhere on that day the Virginians assembled for worship. Tea no longer found a place upon their tables, and money and provisions were sent to their fellow-countrymen in Boston.

**The First Congress.**—The first Continental Congress was called and met promptly in Philadelphia, September 5, 1774, each colony except Georgia being represented. It was composed of fifty delegates. The Virginia delegates were Peyton Randolph, Richard Henry Lee, George Washington, Patrick Henry, Richard Bland, Benjamin Harrison, and Edmund Pendleton. The other colonies sent their wisest men. From South Carolina came Christopher Gadsden and Edward Rutledge; from Massachusetts, Samuel and John Adams; from Connecticut, Roger Sherman; from New York, John Jay and Philip Livingston.

**Its Wise Proceedings.**—The meeting was opened with prayer, and a deep earnestness prevailed. The action of the delegates was wise and judicious. They drew up an address to the people of Great Britain and another to the people of America, and the body then adjourned to meet again when necessary.

**The Effect in Europe.**—This moderation gained for the colonists the approval and commendation of all Europe, and even of many in England itself. Lord Chatham, in the House of Lords, paid a high tribute to the American people and their representatives assembled in Philadelphia, who had now finished their work and quietly dispersed.



GEORGE MASON.

**George Mason.**—George Mason, of whom mention has been made, as the author of the Virginia non-importation resolutions, was one of the greatest Virginians of his day. He was descended from an officer in the army of King Charles I., who came to Virginia after the execution of that monarch. His home was at "Gunston Hall," on the Potomac, where he lived with his family to whom he was tenderly devoted, busy with the duties of a Virginia planter and enjoying the congenial society of books.

**The Bill of Rights.**—The Great Bill of Rights, of which he is the author, was the foundation of Virginia's first constitution, as well as of that of the United States. Mason's statue stands in the Capitol Square in Richmond with those of Washington, Jefferson, Patrick Henry, and John Marshall, who were his friends and fellow-patriots.

**Andrew Lewis.**—In the bronze group upon this same monument is another and very different figure, that of General Andrew Lewis, who, dressed in his hunting shirt with rifle in hand, fitly typifies the Virginian who lived and fought on the frontiers of the State in that day. The story of Lewis is an interesting one. He was born in



Ireland in 1730, and his father was one of the Scotch-Irish who, in 1737, settled in the Valley of Virginia. Lewis's personal courage and ability early won for him the confidence of his neighbors and friends.

**Sent Against the Indians.**—When, in the spring of 1774, the Indians renewed their hostilities, he was chosen to lead a force against them, which was to co-operate with another under Lord Dunmore himself. Lewis's own command amounted to more than a thousand men, and in September they set out for the Kanawha River. Provisions and ammunition had to be carried on pack-horses. Their progress was necessarily slow, so that it took them a month to make the journey.

**Battle of Point Pleasant.**—At length Point Pleasant, at the junction of the Kanawha with the Ohio River, where they expected to find Dunmore, was reached, but he was not there, and soon a message was received from his camp near the site of the present town of Chillicothe, Ohio, ordering Lewis to join him there; but before Lewis could obey the Indians suddenly attacked him. He was largely outnumbered, but his men fought gallantly, and all day long the battle raged, the Virginians stubbornly holding their ground, the Indians constantly pouring fresh reinforcements upon them. Twelve officers and over two hundred of the Virginians were killed and wounded, and still the struggle was not ended. Lewis now decided to bring matters to a close, and sent a force to fall upon the rear of the Indians, while he charged in front. Surprised and bewildered, the savages gave way, and in spite of the efforts of their chiefs to rally them, finally fled, and the victory was won by the Virginians.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. For what principle were the Americans contending?
2. Did the English government yield the principle?
3. What other duties were laid?
4. Who was now governor of Virginia, and what was his character?
5. What other objectionable law was passed?
6. What did the House of Burgesses declare about these laws, and what did the Governor do?

7. Where did the members meet and what resolutions did they adopt?
8. Who wrote them?
9. What did the English government do then?
10. What committee did the Virginians appoint?
11. Who were members of it?
12. To whom and where did the Virginians erect a monument?
13. Who was the next Governor of Virginia?
14. What is said of him?
15. When the news of the appointment of the committee of correspondence reached England, what was the effect and why?
16. Tell about the Boston tea-party.
17. What happened at Annapolis? What at Wilmington?
18. What resolutions did the Virginia Burgesses adopt?
19. What is a day of fasting and prayer?
20. When and where did the first Congress meet?
21. How many delegates were there and who represented Virginia?
22. Tell of their proceedings.
23. What was the effect in Europe?
24. Tell what you know of George Mason.
25. Of what was he the author?
26. Tell of Andrew Lewis and his battle with the Indians.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

STORY OF LEWIS, CONTINUED—THE VIRGINIA CONVENTION—REMOVAL OF THE POWDER—MUSTERING OF THE MINUTE-MEN—PAYMENT FOR THE POWDER—LORD NORTH'S PEACE MEASURES.

**Lewis Marches to Join Dunmore.**—When his wounded had been cared for and his dead buried, Lewis set out to find Lord Dunmore, who, throughout the fierce struggle, had rendered them no assistance, although his force amounted to over a thousand men.

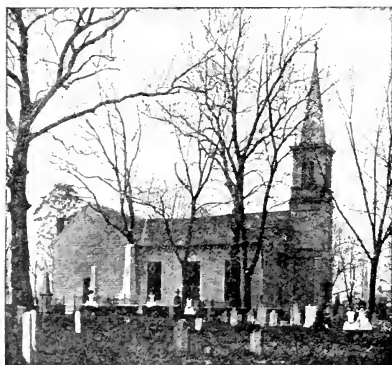
**The Meeting—Suspensions Against Dunmore.**—When the two officers met there was a stormy scene. The Virginians believed that the English governor had plotted with the Indians for their destruction, hoping to divert public attention from the controversy with England, and by destroying General Lewis's command to seriously cripple the military power of Virginia. The evidence against the governor was strong, but the charges could not be proved at this time, though six months later his private agent was captured on the frontier and on him was found written authority from Lord Dunmore to induce the Indians to rise and massacre the Virginians. Later on the governor wrote to Lord Dartmouth that he would require but few English troops to put down the rebellion, since he could raise such a force of negroes and Indians as would soon bring the Virginians to terms.

**Dunmore's Fiendish Purpose.**—His intention was to free and arm the slaves and instigate them to unite with the savages in their fiendish work. Dunmore's plans evidently had the approval and endorsement of the English government, for during the war now at hand England's officers offered a bounty for the scalp of every white man, woman or child taken by the Indians. It is difficult to believe that a Christian king and a civilized nation could

countenance such barbarous cruelty, but it is nevertheless true, and the monument in Canada to the memory of Brandt, the perpetrator of the massacre of Wyoming, perpetuates the record.

**The Mettle of the Virginians.**—But Governor Dunmore was soon to learn what the mettle of these Virginians was whom he thought he could so easily crush. In every county in the colony they were arming and organizing for service. There was a committee of safety in each county as well, under whose orders the minute-men were to act.

**The Virginia Convention.**—When the time came for the convention to meet they assembled in Richmond instead



OLD ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND.

of Williamsburg, where Dunmore held his court and where his troops kept watch over the town. The assembly met (March, 1775,) in old Saint John's church, in Richmond, and Edmund Pendleton was chosen president. Patrick Henry made on this occasion the famous speech with the closing words of which every school boy is familiar: "If we wish to

be free," he said, "we must fight. The next gale which sweeps from the north will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms. I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death!"

**Battle of Lexington.**—The truth of Henry's words was soon to be verified. In less than a month the collision between the British troops and the Massachusetts minute-men near Lexington took place. There was no undue haste or rashness in the action of the Virginia convention. It expressed an earnest desire for peace, at the same time that it resolved to prepare for war.

**Seizure of the Powder.**—The opening months of the year 1775 passed; the people, meanwhile, hoping for the best, but preparing for the worst.

The worst was soon to come. Lord

Dunmore's first act was an attempt to seize the military stores of Virginia, which were kept in the magazine at Williamsburg. In the dead of

the night he had the gunpowder, which was stored

there, conveyed to

one of the British

men-of-war moored

in James River.

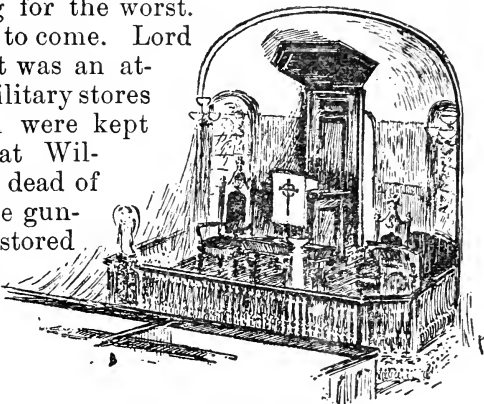
When this was discovered such an out-

burst of popular feeling took place that the governor promised that the powder should be returned.

**The Minute-Men.**—When the news of his action reached Fredericksburg, the minute-men mustered under arms immediately, with the intention of marching on Williamsburg and demanding the return of the powder. Washington and Pendleton urged them to await the decision of Congress in the matter, and they finally consented to disband, after signing a pledge to defend Virginia or any other colony against the encroachments of the king of England.

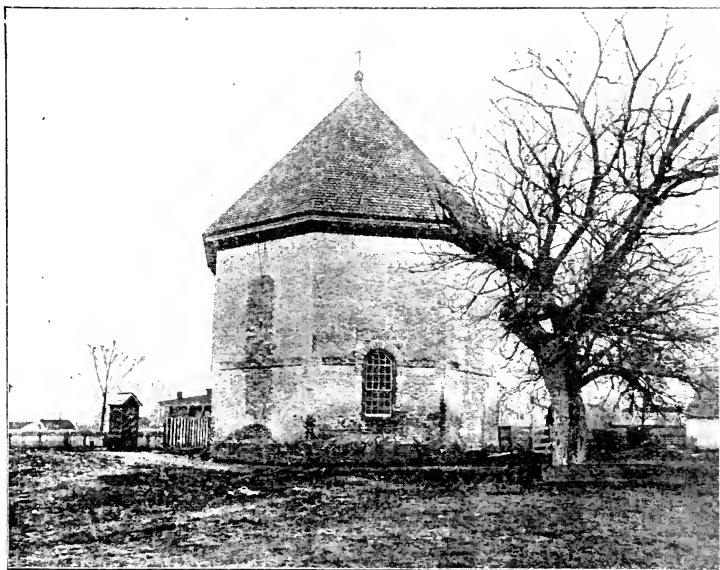
**Patrick Henry Marches on Williamsburg.**—Meanwhile Patrick Henry, with his usual impetuosity, had already mustered a company at Newcastle, in Hanover, and set out for Williamsburg. The people flocked to him as he marched, and he soon approached the capital with a force of 150 men.

**Payment for the Powder.**—Here all was confusion. Lord Dunmore hurried his family on board one of the British men-of-war, and he agreed to pay for the powder, sending Henry a cheque through the treasurer of the colony for



OLD PULPIT AND CHANCEL OF ST. JOHN'S.

£330. Henry gave a receipt for this amount, binding himself to turn it over to the Virginia delegates in Congress, and returned home with his command. Dunmore forthwith proceeded to make a public proclamation denouncing Henry and his associates as traitors in arms, which does not appear to have troubled either Henry or his men very much.



OLD POWDER HORN, WILLIAMSBURG, THE MAGAZINE FROM WHICH DUNMORE REMOVED THE POWDER.

**Lord North's Peace Measures.**—Suddenly the news reached Virginia that England had determined to adopt more peaceful methods. The Earl of Guilford, better known as Lord North, then prime minister, had introduced a measure looking to a satisfactory settlement of the questions at issue. The colonies would themselves be permitted to decide what taxes they should pay toward the support of the home government.

**House of Burgesses Called.**—This proposal gave some

hope of a basis of agreement, and Lord Dunmore summoned the burgesses to meet at Williamsburg to consider the matter. It was the last time that an English governor was to call upon the Virginia assembly to convene. He now appeared before them, and offering them courteous welcome, laid Lord North's "olive branch," as it was called, before them.

#### **Committee Appointed—Its Report.—**

A committee was immediately selected to consider and report upon it. Thomas Jefferson prepared this report, which opposed the acceptance of the Prime Minister's proposition. The committee stated that the colonists had the right to expend their money as they chose without permission from anyone. That they had been wronged and their country invaded, and that as far as Virginia was concerned she would take no action without first consulting her sister colonies.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

**Wounding of Citizens—Flight of Dunmore.**—While the matter was still under discussion an accident occurred which made a further consideration impossible. A party of young men entering the magazine to procure arms, were wounded by a spring-gun concealed within. The people immediately thronged about the magazine and made such threatening demonstrations that Lord Dunmore fled to the British man-of-war *Fowey* for protection. He never returned to Williamsburg, and, as the members of the burgesses refused to visit him on board the ship, there was an end of the matter; and, finding he could do nothing, he sailed away and proceeded to lay waste the shores of the adjacent counties.

**Dunmore's Depredations.**—Back and forth along Chesapeake Bay he went ravaging the country at his pleasure, until a force was sent to Norfolk, where he had established his headquarters, to put an end to his depredations.

**Battle of Great Bridge.**—They met the British near the town, and in the engagement which followed the English

officer in command was killed and his men driven back. Dunmore, who seems always more ready to fly or plunder than to fight, hastened to his fleet, whence he ordered the destruction of the town.

**Burning of Norfolk.**—The place was set on fire, and while the helpless women and children were fleeing from their blazing homes this most unworthy of all the royal governors of Virginia opened a cannonade upon them from his fleet.

**Dunmore Driven from Virginia.**—From Norfolk he sailed to the western shore of the Chesapeake, and occupied Gwynn's Island, at the mouth of the Piankatank, in Mathews county, where his old acquaintance, General Lewis, attacked him with such good result that he made haste to New York and thence to England, leaving behind him for all time a dishonored name.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What of the meeting between General Lewis and Lord Dunmore?
2. What did the Virginians believe about Dunmore?
3. What was his object?
4. What proofs were afterwards obtained against him?
5. For what did English officers offer a bounty?
6. How were the Virginians engaged at this time?
7. When and where did the Virginia Convention meet?
8. What celebrated and familiar speech was made there?
9. Tell of its action.
10. Tell the story of the seizure of the powder.
11. Of the Fredericksburg minute-men.
12. Of Patrick Henry.
13. What did Dunmore do?
14. Who was Lord North, and what can you tell about his peace measures?
15. What did the committee of the House of Burgesses say in reply?
16. Who wrote this report?
17. What prevented further consideration of Lord North's plan?
18. Tell about Dunmore's depredations.
19. Of the battle of Great Bridge and the burning of Norfolk.
20. Where did Dunmore make his last stand in Virginia, and who drove him off?



## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

CHAPTER XVI.—George Washington—Appointment in British Navy  
Employed as a surveyor.  
Appointed Adjutant-General—Mission to the French.  
French Encroachments.  
The Result of His Mission—Placed in Command.  
Braddock's Expedition—Defeat of Braddock.  
Washington Again in Command.  
Patrick Henry—His Education and Early Life.  
The Parsons' Cause.  
King George III.  
The Stamp Act.  
Resolutions of the House of Burgesses.  
Repeal of the Act.

CHAPTER XVII.—New Duties Laid—Lord Botetourt.  
Virginians to be Carried to England for Trial.  
Action of the Burgesses—House Dissolved.  
Non-Importation Resolutions.  
Duties Repealed except on Tea.  
Committee of Correspondence.  
Death of Botetourt—Lord Dunmore Governor.  
British Troops Occupy Boston.  
“The Boston Tea Party.”  
The News Sent Out.  
Resolutions of the Burgesses.  
A Solemn Fast—The First Congress.  
Its Wise Proceedings.  
The Effect in Europe.  
George Mason—Andrew Lewis.  
Battle of Point Pleasant.

CHAPTER XVIII.—Lewis Marches to Join Dunmore.  
The Meeting—Suspicious Against Dunmore.  
Dunmore's Fiendish Purpose.  
The Mettle of the Virginians.  
The Virginia Convention.  
Battle of Lexington.  
Seizure of the Powder.  
The Minute-men.  
Patrick Henry Marches on Williamsburg.  
Payment for the Powder.  
Lord North's Peace Measures.  
House of Burgesses Called.  
Committee Appointed—Its Report.  
Wounding of Citizens—Flight of Dunmore.  
Dunmore's Depredations.  
Burning of Norfolk.  
Dunmore Driven from Virginia.

## CHAPTER XIX.

COMMITTEE APPOINTED—VIRGINIA RESOLUTIONS—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE—DISESTABLISHMENT OF THE CHURCH—PRIMOGENITURE—GEORGE ROGERS CLARKE.

**Committee of Safety.**—When Lord Dunmore fled from Williamsburg, Virginia, being left without a governor, proceeded to choose a committee to act in his place. It numbered eleven members, and Edmund Pendleton was chosen President. The committee had absolute authority, being accountable only to the convention. Patrick Henry was chosen commander-in-chief of the Virginia forces, and thus the work to be done was at last successfully inaugurated.



EDMUND PENDLETON.

**The Virginia Resolutions.**— A year had passed since the minutemen, assembled at Fredericksburg, had pledged themselves and their swords to the service of the Commonwealth, and cried, "God save the liberties of America." The time had now come when it behooved the American people as a nation to define their position and announce their intention to the

world. Resolutions, declaring the colony free and independent, were prepared by Edmund Pendleton and read to the troops assembled at Williamsburg, who received them with shouts of applause. This was followed by the Bill of Rights and the new Constitution of Virginia, both written by George Mason. The former remains to-day almost the same as when first adopted. Patrick Henry was elected governor, and Edmund Randolph attorney-general.

**Richard Henry Lee's Resolutions.**—When Congress met in Philadelphia a month later (June 7) Richard Henry Lee moved the adoption of resolutions declaring, "That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States," and proposing a plan of confederation to the colonies; and John Adams, of Massachusetts, seconded the motion.

**The Declaration of Independence—**

**July 4, 1776.**—The debate upon so open a declaration of war lasted three days, but Lee's motion finally prevailed. Mr. Lee having returned home, Thomas Jefferson was chosen to draw up the necessary paper, and it has come down to us through all these years as "The Declaration of Independence." From beginning to end it was the work of Virginia. A Virginia planter (Mason) conceived it; a Virginia lawyer (Jefferson) drafted it; and a Virginia soldier (George Washington) defended it and made it a living reality.



RICHARD HENRY LEE.

**Religious Controversies.**—It would seem that there was at this time trouble enough abroad to tax the energies of every man, but another element of discord was to be added in a bitter religious controversy among the members of the different churches in the State. Since the foundation of the colony the Church of England had been recognized and established in Virginia as in England. Its churches had been maintained and its clergy paid from the public funds, and alas! in its day of power much evil had been wrought in its name. The Baptists had especially felt the weight of its disapproval, and now reinforced by the Presbyterians and the Quakers, they were to retaliate. A fierce fight, led by Mr. Jefferson, himself a member of no religious body, was to be made upon the Established Church. In this he was supported by the leading non-conformists of the State.

**Disestablishment of the Church.**—The friends of the Established Church rallied to its aid. They admitted that

abuses had crept in and that many of its clergy had proved themselves unworthy, but it was the church of their earliest affections, and it should not be overthrown without a struggle. Edmund Pendleton pleaded earnestly in its behalf. He was a man of the highest character and ability, but he could not prevail, and the disestablishment of the Church of England in Virginia was accomplished.

**Religious Liberty.**—To-day we know that government support of any denomination is unwise and unnecessary. In this free land of ours every man is now at liberty to worship as he chooses, and to contribute as he sees fit to the maintenance of his own church. The disestablishment of the church in Virginia must inevitably have come in time, but it is to be regretted that harsh and arbitrary measures were ever employed to accomplish such work.

**The Law of Primogeniture.**—Along with the downfall of the English church went also the English law of primogeniture. By this law the vast estates in the colony had descended from the father to the eldest son for generations. This property could not be willed away from the direct line of descent, nor held responsible for any debts made by its owner. This law is still in force in England, but was swept from the statute books of Virginia more than a century ago.



DANIEL MORGAN.

**Progress of the War.**—While all this uproar and confusion of tongues prevailed within the Commonwealth, the war with England was being energetically conducted to the northward. Washington was in command of the armies of the united colonies; volunteers from Virginia had long since marched to the aid of Massachusetts; Morgan's riflemen from the Valley had won distinction on every field, and throughout the contest her sons were to uphold with courage and fortitude the honor of their State.

**Expedition Against the British in the Northwest.**—I

will not touch upon the revolutionary campaigns of 1775, 1776 and 1777. The soldiers of Virginia were soon to win distinction in the Northwest, the vast territory lying between the Great Lakes, the Ohio River and the Mississippi, which had already been the scene of many a border struggle. By the terms of her charter Virginia owned all this territory, and an expedition was now to be made against the English forces garrisoned there.

**George Rogers Clarke's Victories.**—This expedition was in command of General George Rogers Clarke, a native of Albemarle county, who had fought with Lewis at Point Pleasant. He laid his plans before Patrick Henry, who gave him authority to raise four companies of Virginia troops; and in 1778 he set out to capture the forts at Kaskaskia and Vincennes. He succeeded in both attempts, and, leaving a garrison to hold what he had won, he returned home.



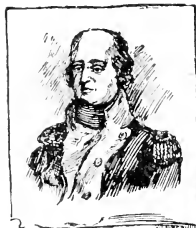
GEORGE R. CLARKE.

**The British Recapture Vincennes.**—Within a short time he learned that the English had come down from Canada and retaken Vincennes, and he at once set about a new effort against them. The royal forces were commanded by the governor of Canada, Colonel Hamilton, who, on account of the readiness with which he purchased the scalps of the white settlers from the Indians, was called "the hairbuyer general."

**Clarke's Second Campaign.**—Clarke set out in the bitter winter weather on his march through the wilderness. Much of the low country was under water, and through this the troops struggled half-frozen as they marched and weak from hunger. Their approach was entirely unsuspected by Hamilton, who believed such a march as they had made in such weather impossible. Nevertheless, he fought bravely for possession of Vincennes, but was at last obliged to surrender, and was sent a prisoner to Williamsburg.

**The Northwest Territory.**—By this dauntless exploit the whole of the Northwest Territory fell into possession of Virginia; and, after the Revolution, was transferred by her to the United States. Clarke earned for himself the title of “the Hannibal of the West,” an honor he richly deserved.

**The Character of the Virginians.**—Those old Virginians were a brave and active people; for generations they held themselves ready to defend their homes. They were hunters and horsemen, and were trained to war with the Indians. They had been taught by their mothers



and their preachers to love and honor the king, but to defend their rights if ever the English crown de-

nied them. Above all, they were taught their duty to God, to tell the truth, to respect and protect women, and to fear no man; and it is no wonder that they succeeded against such heavy odds. The women were as brave and as self-sacrificing as the men, and young and old alike did their part.

**Elizabeth Zane.**—Among the names remembered in the history of the border is that of Elizabeth Zane. The governor of Canada sent a band of Indians to surprise and murder the people at Wheeling. The settlers managed to reach the fort, and fought till their powder was exhausted. Elizabeth Zane, a young girl, volunteered to go for powder, and succeeded, though under fire of the Indians, in bring-



CLARKE'S MARCH TO VINCENNES.

ing a keg of gunpowder into the fort, which was saved by her heroism.

## QUESTIONS.

1. When Dunmore fled, what kind of government did the Virginians adopt?
2. Who was chosen commander-in-chief?
3. What celebrated papers were adopted?
4. Who wrote them?
5. Who was the first governor of Virginia under the new government?
6. When, where, and by whom were the first resolutions offered declaring all the colonies free and independent?
7. Who wrote the Declaration of Independence?
8. What religious controversy occurred about this time?
9. Who were the leaders?
10. What do you understand by "religious liberty?"
11. What was the law of primogeniture?
12. Tell about the progress of the war.
13. Who conducted an army in the Northwest?
14. Where are Kaskaskia and Vincennes?
15. What State owned this territory?
16. Tell of Clarke's march.
17. What did Virginia do with this great domain conquered by her soldiers?
18. Tell what is said of the character of the Virginians of that day.
19. Tell the story of Elizabeth Zane.

## CHAPTER XX.

THE PROGRESS OF THE WAR—ARNOLD'S INVASION—LORD CORNWALLIS—TARLETON'S RAIDS—ALLIANCE WITH FRANCE—YORKTOWN.

**The Unequal Struggle.**—The war of the Revolution was now fairly under way and the prospects of the American people had not brightened with the passing months. It was a very unequal struggle between the wealth and power of a great nation and the determined efforts of weak colonies. The longer the war continued the greater the drain upon the resources of the Americans and the smaller their chances for success.

**The War Transferred to Virginia—Benedict Arnold.**—Heretofore the contest had been conducted chiefly in the northern colonies and in the Carolinas, but now Virginia was to become the battle-ground. In 1781 Benedict Arnold, of New England, the traitor, who had agreed to sell West Point to the British, and who had received as his reward a commission in the royal army, £6,315 and the contempt of mankind, arrived in Chesapeake Bay with nearly a thousand men. There was no one to oppose him, all the available troops in the State having been sent to General Greene in the Carolinas, and Arnold marched on Richmond, meeting with little or no opposition on the way. He burned the warehouses and public buildings, and retreated to Portsmouth, followed by a small force of militia. A more determined attack was soon to be made by Lord Cornwallis, who commanded the British army in the South, and was now moving from North Carolina into Virginia.



LAFAYETTE,

**Lafayette.**—Washington sent Lafayette to oppose him. This young French nobleman had offered his sword to the American cause and was to prove a valued ally in her



hour of need. Cornwallis, an officer of years and experience, ridiculed the idea that his young opponent could embarrass him or thwart his plans.

**Tarleton's Burnings.**—The English method of conducting the war was cruel in the extreme. The cavalry, under Tarleton, advanced, ravaging the country as they rode. Houses and barns were robbed and burned, and stock of all kinds stolen or killed. What they could not use they wantonly destroyed. They found Virginia a land of prosperity and plenty, and left it devastated and in ruins.

**Effort to Capture the Governor and Legislature.**—One of Tarleton's objects was to capture Governor Jefferson and the members of the assembly, then in session at Charlottesville, and but for the fidelity of a negro servant he might have done so, for his approach was so sudden that no one was prepared for it. It chanced that there was a dinner party on the day of Tarleton's raid at Castle Hill, the home of Dr. Thomas Walker, of Albemarle. Dr. Walker had served with Washington in Braddock's defeat, and was a man of prominence in the State. Among his guests at dinner was Patrick Henry. In the midst of the entertainment one of Dr. Walker's servants reported to him the approach of the British. A mounted messenger was at once sent to warn Mr. Jefferson, while Dr. Walker, Patrick Henry and the other guests mounted in haste and set out for Staunton by the old road over Rockfish Gap.

**Anecdote of Patrick Henry.**—Night overtook them on the way, and they stopped at a small cabin on the roadside and asked its mistress for shelter, explaining that they were fleeing from the British cavalry. The Virginia matron listened to their story, but she gave them no sympathy. On the contrary, she told them they were cowards, adding, "If Patrick Henry had only been there he would have stayed and fought the British." Whereupon, that gentleman coming forward out of the darkness, introduced himself and explained to her that half a dozen men could not fight a regiment, and convinced her

it was proper that they should not permit themselves to be captured by the enemy. Satisfied finally with his explanation, she admitted them and gave them food and shelter.

**Escape of Governor Jefferson.**—Meanwhile Mr. Jefferson had received the message sent him, and hurriedly placing his family in a carriage and mounting his horse, left Monticello and sought shelter elsewhere. Thus Tarleton was foiled in his purpose.



MONTICELLO, THE HOME OF JEFFERSON.

**Tarleton Takes a Hint.** When he reached Castle Hill his men swept the place of everything save one old gander, which looked too tough for their

consumption. Mrs. Walker had the fowl caught and sent it to Colonel Tarleton with her compliments, and the British officer, taking the hint, gave orders that no further depredations be committed.

**The Cost of the Invasion.**—Lafayette and Cornwallis marched and manœuvred through much of Tidewater Virginia. The loss to the State during that year from the ravages of the British troops under Arnold, Simcoe, Phillips and Cornwallis, was estimated at several million pounds.

**The Outlook Gloomy.**—The prospects of the colonies seemed uncertain enough as the year 1781 drew to a close, and few would have believed that the end of the struggle was so near. Clinton was in New York and Cornwallis was at Yorktown, strongly fortifying himself against attack, but a change was at hand.

**France Our Friend.**—France had decided to take decisive steps in behalf of the American colonies, and Count Rochambeau was sent to Connecticut with 6,000 men, while a fleet under Count de Grasse sailed for Chesapeake Bay. It was determined that the French and American

forces should be united and concentrated against Cornwallis. The plan was kept a profound secret, Washington's wish being that the British should have no suspicion of his intention until it should be too late to send reinforcements to Cornwallis. The



MILITARY HAT OF REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.\*

latter, with only Lafayette in his front, felt certain of the safety of his army until a fleet could be sent from New York to convey it thither.



SWORDS.\*

**Siege of Yorktown.**—Suddenly De Grasse and Washington, with the French under Rochambeau, none of whom he was expecting, appeared—De Grasse by water, and the others by land—and September 25th the siege of Yorktown began. After more than a week's bombardment it was decided to carry the works with the bayonet.

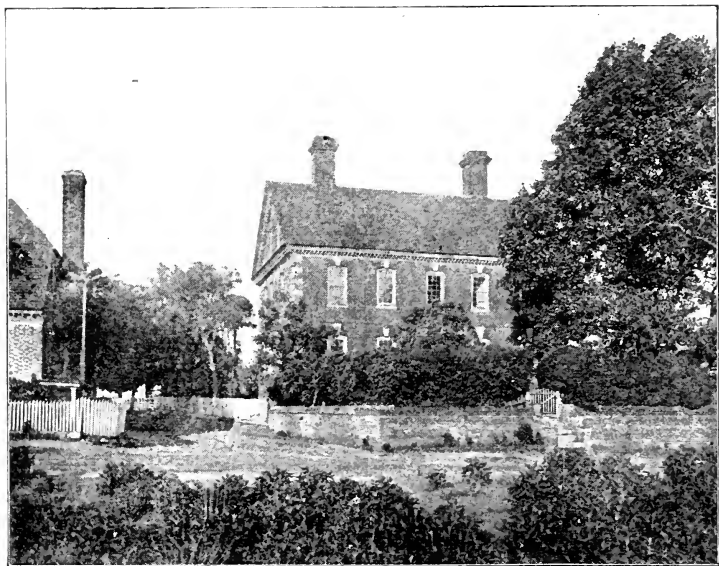
**The Assault.**—The assault was made at night, October 14th, the Americans under Alexander Hamilton advancing on the right, and the French under Baron Viomenil on the left. The defences were taken, and the cheers of the Americans and French conveyed the good news to Washington, anxiously awaiting the result.

**A Truce Proposed.**—Cornwallis made a last effort to escape from the trap in which he found himself by crossing the river and retreating toward New York. But a storm scattered and sunk his boats, and finally, on the 17th of October, 1781, he decided to surrender, and proposed a truce of twenty-four hours to discuss the situation. Washington replied that he would only give him *two* hours. The American commander-in-chief realized that no time must

\*In the collection of the Virginia Historical Society.

be lost, for any moment might bring news of the British reinforcements from New York.

**Surrender of Cornwallis.**—Cornwallis was forced to agree to the terms proposed, and at noon on October 19, 1781, the English forces marched out of Yorktown, and the Americans and French took possession of the place. This virtually ended the war. The king still obstinately insisted on further hostilities, but the ministry and the people were against him, and peace was at last declared.



NELSON HOUSE, YORKTOWN, ON WHICH GENERAL NELSON REQUESTED THE GUNNERS TO DIRECT THEIR GUNS.

**Nelson and the Gunners.**—An incident occurred during the siege which illustrates the spirit of the Virginians. General Thomas Nelson, who succeeded Mr. Jefferson as governor of Virginia, was the wealthiest gentleman in the State, and as generous as he was wealthy. He had brought to the army of Washington at Yorktown, 3,200 militia, and by the use of his own credit fed the whole

army at Yorktown during the operations there. Governor Nelson's house was within Cornwallis's lines and sheltered the British from the fire of the Americans. They were reluctant to fire upon it, but that noble man said he would give five guineas to the cannoneer who would first put a ball through it. Very soon one went crashing through its walls. The old house still stands. It was no wonder that after the war General Nelson was no longer a rich man, and when General Lafayette revisited Virginia many years after the war of the Revolution, in which he had borne so brave a part, he wrote to Mrs. Nelson, then living in a modest house in Hanover county, that he desired to visit her and pay his respects. She replied that she was unable to receive him and entertain him as so noble a guest should be received, but she sent her sons to escort him on his visit to Yorktown. General Nelson's statue stands upon the great Washington monument in our beautiful Capitol Square. He has many worthy descendants in Virginia.

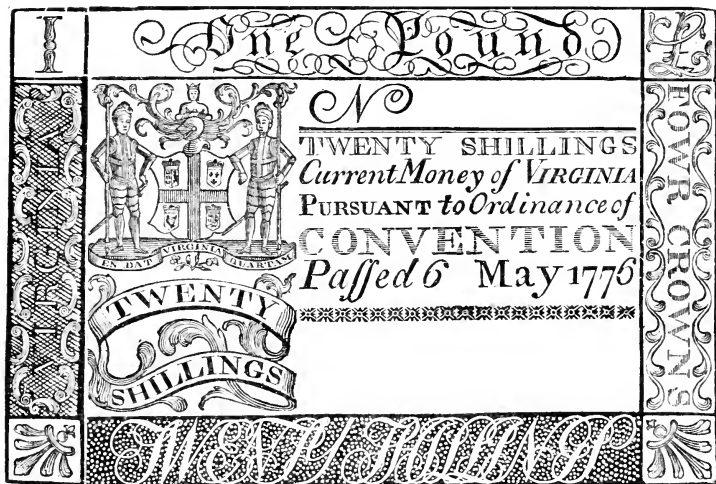
#### QUESTIONS.

1. What were the prospects of the Americans in the Revolution as the war continued?
2. Where had the war been carried on chiefly?
3. When and by whom was Virginia invaded?
4. Tell of Arnold and his depredations.
5. Who was sent to oppose him?
6. Tell what you know of Lafayette.
7. Who was Lord Cornwallis?
8. Who commanded Cornwallis's cavalry?
9. How did they carry on the war?
10. Tell of Tarleton's attempt to capture the legislature.
11. Tell the anecdote of Patrick Henry.
12. Tell the incident of Mrs. Walker and Tarleton.
13. What was the outlook for the colonies in 1781?
14. Who came to the assistance of the Americans?
15. What plan did Washington form?
16. Tell of the siege of Yorktown.
17. What did Cornwallis propose, and what was Washington's reply?
18. When did the surrender take place, and what was the effect?
19. Tell the incident of Governor Nelson.

## CHAPTER XXI.

## VIRGINIA AT THE CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION.

**The Poverty of the People** —When the Revolutionary War ended, the people of Virginia were very poor. The State had contributed largely to the support of the Continental armies, and the prisoners captured at the surrender of Burgoyne had been quartered within her borders; her coasts had been ravaged by the marauding expedi-



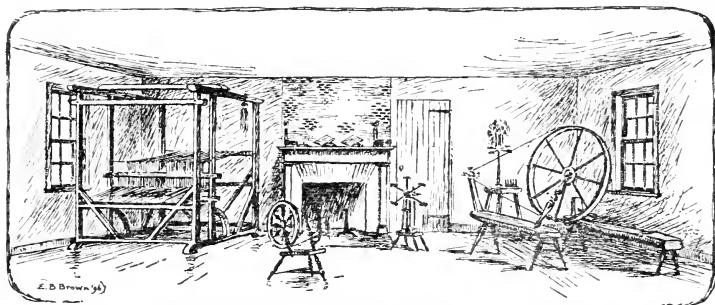
FAC-SIMILE OF VIRGINIA NOTE IN HISTORICAL SOCIETY COLLECTION.

tions of Arnold and Phillips, and her plantations and villages far in the interior laid waste by the wanton depredations of Tarleton and Cornwallis. The American and French troops engaged in the siege of Yorktown had been supplied from her stores.

**Recovery Slow.**—Some years passed before she recovered from the immense drain made by the war upon her re-

sources and from the losses sustained in property destroyed or carried off by the enemy, including many negro slaves whose labor would have been helpful in building up her waste places. These losses were aggravated by the fact that there was little or no money in the country except the old Continental paper money, which had become worthless, and the paper money issued by the States, which was but little better, and a few gold and silver coins of England, France, Spain and Holland.

**Difficulty of Collecting Taxes.**—In many of the richest counties in the State the people were too poor to pay their taxes. Few persons could be found who would volunta-



WEAVING AND SPINNING-ROOM AT MT. VERNON.

rily undertake the office of high-sheriff, and most of those who were compelled to assume the office saw their private fortunes swept away to meet the demands of the State for taxes which they were unable to collect from the people.

**The Country New.**—The country was, however, comparatively new and sparsely settled, and there were thousands of acres of rich and productive lands to be had at low prices. There were few villages and fewer towns, as the people were almost exclusively engaged in agriculture, and lived on their farms. Norfolk, the chief seaport of Virginia, had, however, a larger trade than New York, and the flags of all nations floated in her harbor, and Virginia soon began to advance in population and wealth. The tobacco crop was large and was shipped to Europe,

the returning ships being richly freighted with fine clothing, furniture, and luxuries for the table. From 1791 to 1802 Virginia exported products valued at \$42,833,000, and the revenues of the State derived from custom duties for the year preceding the adoption of the Constitution exceeded \$300,000.

**How the People Lived.**—The change from the colonial form of government to that of a federative republic brought little change in the customs and manner of life of the people. In Eastern Virginia the lowlands along the principal water courses formed the plantations of the large landed proprietors, which were cultivated by ne-



WOODLAWN, THE HOME OF NELLIE CUSTIS, BUILT IN 1803.

groes, and were oftener than otherwise in charge of a manager or overseer, for the proprietors, to avoid the malaria of the lowlands, then more to be dreaded than now, built their residences back in the forests among the hills which overlooked the streams. The lands still farther in the interior were usually held by the smaller planters and farmers, most of whom lived in as much comfort, if not on so expansive a scale, as their lowland neighbors.

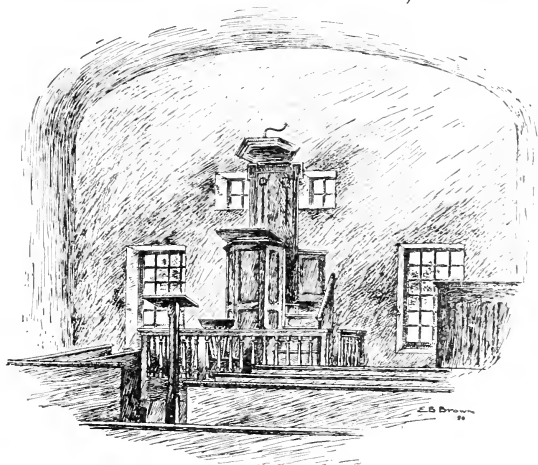
**Their Industries.**—Besides the grain and tobacco, the horses, cattle, sheep, hogs, and poultry produced on the plantations, their hoes, plows, axes and other implements



of husbandry, many articles of furniture and of household use, as well as their ordinary clothing, were made at home, each large plantation having its blacksmiths, carpenters, tanners, shoemakers, spinners, weavers and tailors, and often its millers, so that they were in the main self-sustaining and independent.

**Their Exports and Imports.**—The wealthier class shipped their tobacco and flour to their merchants, or factors, in foreign

countries, and the vessels brought back to their wharves as return cargoes the broadcloths, the silks, velvets, brocades, dimities, taffetas, laces, and linens which they wore, and in which they appear in the



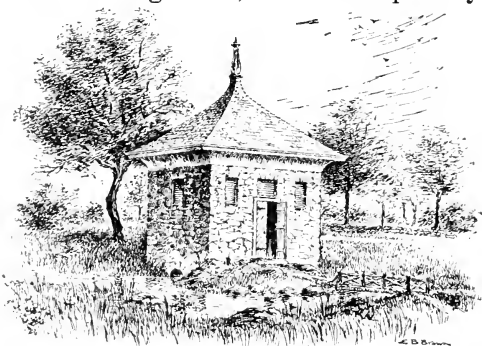
INTERIOR OF OLD CHAPEL NEAR BERRYVILLE.

pictures and portraits which have come down to us from that period; and also the sugar, molasses, rum, fruits, wines, and other luxuries for their tables. The smaller planters and farmers sold their surplus products to the home merchants and took in exchange the foreign goods which they needed.

**Paupers.**—There were few paupers, for in a land so blest by nature, under liberal laws which secured to the individual the fruits of his labor, energy and industry received their due reward, and only the idle and dissolute could come to want.

**Piedmont and the Valley.**—In Piedmont and the Valley the slaves were not so numerous as in the eastern and

southern counties, but their fertile lands, adapted to the cereals and grasses, and consequently to stock-raising, as



EXTERIOR OF SPRING-HOUSE IN VALLEY OF VIRGINIA.

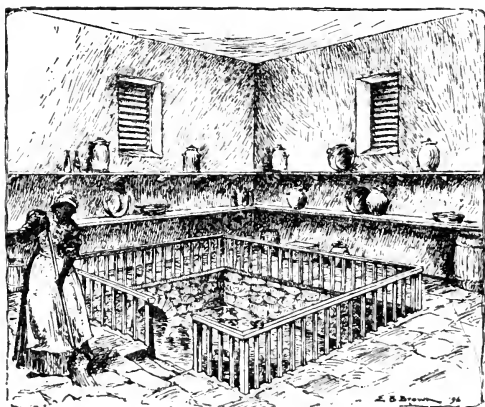
well as tobacco, were the homes of a thrifty, industrious, intelligent, and cultivated population.

#### **Their Markets.—**

There were no railroads, and the trade of the Valley and the interior found markets at the head of navigation

on the various rivers. Richmond, Petersburg, Fredericksburg, Alexandria and Norfolk were the principal outlets to which it was hauled by wagons or brought by boats from the head-waters of the streams. From these ports the products of the country were shipped in sailing vessels to the West Indies, to Old and New England, and to other countries.

**The Wagon Trains.**—These trains of wagons, from the upper country, with their snow-white canvas covers, their fat, sleek, well-groomed horses, their harness ornamented with ribbons and hung with tinkling bells, the drivers often in buckskin hunting shirts, and carrying the knife and horn of the



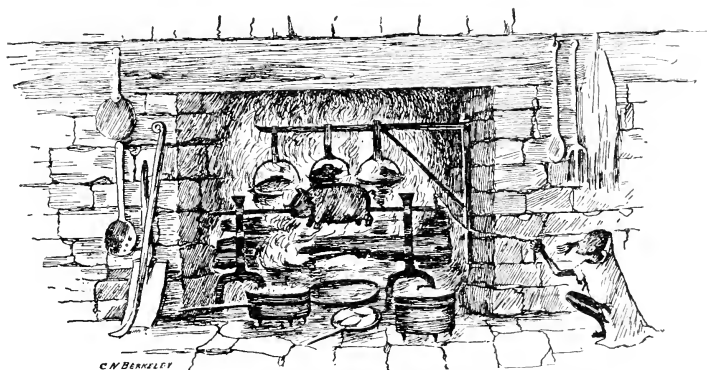
INTERIOR OF SPRING-HOUSE, IN VALLEY OF VIRGINIA.

hanging the knife and horn of the

backwoodsman, made a striking and attractive picture as they wound along the highways that thread many of the beautiful landscapes of the State by day or when lighted up at night by the glare of their camp-fires. With the introduction and extension of railroads the wagon trains gradually disappeared.

## QUESTIONS.

1. What was the condition of the people at the end of the war?
2. Why?
3. What were the people too poor to pay?
4. What contributed to the recovery of the State from her impoverishment?
5. Tell how the people lived in Eastern Virginia.
6. What did they produce?
7. What did they export?
8. What were some of their imports?
9. Why were there few paupers?
10. What is said of Piedmont and the Valley?
11. Where were their principal markets?
12. How were these reached?



C. N. BARNETT

AN EASTERN VIRGINIA KITCHEN PRIOR TO THE WAR.

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

---

### CHAPTER XIX.—Committee of Safety.

The Virginia Resolutions.  
Richard Henry Lee's Resolutions.  
The Declaration of Independence.  
Religious Controversies.  
Disestablishment of the Church.  
Religious Liberty.  
The Law of Primogeniture.  
Progress of the War.  
Expedition Against the British in the Northwest.  
George Rogers Clarke's Victories.  
The Northwest Territory.  
The Character of the Virginians.  
Elizabeth Zane.

### CHAPTER XX.—The Unequal Struggle.

War Transferred to Virginia—Benedict Arnold.  
Lafayette.  
Tarleton's Burnings.  
Effort to Capture the Governor and Legislature.  
Anecdote of Patrick Henry.  
Escape of Governor Jefferson.  
Tarleton Takes a Hint  
The Cost of the Invasion.  
The Outlook Gloomy.  
France Our Friend.  
Siege of Yorktown.  
The Assault.  
A Truce Proposed.  
Surrender of Cornwallis.  
Nelson and the Gunners.

### CHAPTER XXI.—The Poverty of the People.

Recovery Slow.  
The Country New.  
How the People Lived.  
Their Industries.  
Their Exports and Imports.  
Paupers.  
Piedmont and the Valley.  
Their Markets.  
The Wagon Trains.

## CHAPTER XXII.

THE FUTURE GOVERNMENT—THE CONVENTION OF 1787—THE OPPOSITION IN VIRGINIA—THE GOVERNMENT ESTABLISHED—THOMAS JEFFERSON—HIS ADMINISTRATION—LEWIS AND CLARKE'S EXPLORATIONS—AARON BURR—JUDGE MARSHALL.

**The Future Government.**—The question now before the colonies was one of their future union or separation. Would they live as they had fought—one nation—or would they go their separate ways, as before the Revolution?

**Virginia for Union.**—Virginia was strongly for a union of all the States. Her people not only urged and endorsed it, but they were willing to make sacrifices to ensure it. This was proved by the gift of the great Northwest Territory, which belonged absolutely to Virginia, and which she ceded to the government of the United States. It included the territory now occupied by the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin and Michigan.

**Convention, 1787.**—A convention was called, composed of delegates from all the States, to revise the old Articles of Confederation, but it ended in the preparation of a new constitution. It assembled in Philadelphia in 1787, and Washington was elected president. The debates were long and often heated, but at last the articles were agreed upon, and it remained only for the different States to adopt them.

**The Virginia Convention.**—A convention was called in Richmond to consider the new constitution, and now the trouble broke out afresh. Patrick Henry vehemently opposed it, as did Mason, Richard Henry Lee and Monroe. Chief-Justice Marshall, the



JAMES MADISON.

greatest of American jurists, favored its adoption, as did also Washington, Henry Lee and James Madison. The fight in the convention was a bitter one, but the advocates



MONTPELIER, THE HOME OF MADISON.

of the Constitution triumphed by a small majority, and it was decided to accept it subject to certain amendments. The several States ratified the Constitution through conventions at different dates from November 6, 1787, to May 29, 1790, and thus the union of the thirteen original States was found-

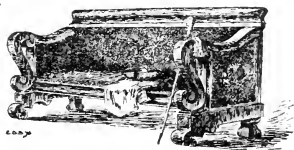
ed. Each one of these considered that it had the power and right to withdraw from the confederation whenever it saw fit, just as it had the power and right to enter it; for three-quarters of a century that right was seldom questioned, and New England had threatened repeatedly through her representatives in Congress and in convention to exercise it, before the first quarter of a century had expired.

**Washington, President.**—George Washington was elected first president of the United States, and took the oath of office in New York city April 30, 1789, and the new order of affairs was thus ushered in.

**Thomas Jefferson.**—In all the difficulties which Virginia had now to meet no one of her sons manifested more zeal or more wisdom in her service than Thomas Jefferson. Governor of the State, representative in congress, minister to France, secretary of state and twice president, his life was a wonderful record of long and honorable public service. Of great simplicity of taste and manner, he abhorred all that tended toward state ceremony or parade of office. His intellect was of the highest order and his industry indefatigable. Early and late he labored for the honor of his State and country.

**University of Virginia.**—It was he who planned and, in 1819, laid the foundation of our great university, and day after day rode down from his home, at Monticello, to note the progress of the work. To the end of his life he toiled in the public service, even when he had declined to accept office again.

**Anecdotes of Jefferson.**—Many stories are told of the simplicity of his manners, of his courtesy alike to high and low. While riding one day with his little grandson, an old negro passed them and doffed his hat. Mr. Jefferson returned the bow, but the boy did not. Observing this, he said to his grandson: "Will you allow a poor negro to be more of a gentleman than you are?" On another occasion, while president, he was riding with some friends, when they came to a stream, and on its bank an old man stood waiting for some means of crossing. As the party paused for a moment, the old man went up to Jefferson and asked if he might ride behind him across the stream. The President immediately assented and carried him safely over. When they reached the other side, one of the party asked the man why he selected Mr. Jefferson to ride with.



ANTIQUE SOFA.

"I didn't like to ask the rest of you," he replied; "but this old gentleman looked as if he wouldn't refuse me, so I asked him." He was much astonished to learn that he had ridden behind the President of the United States.

**Declined a Third Term.**—When his second term as president was nearly ended, Mr. Jefferson was urged to serve for a third time, and five of the States, through their legislatures, endorsed him, but he refused absolutely. His last days were passed in the quiet of his home, "Monticello," near Charlottesville, where he died July 4, 1826,\*

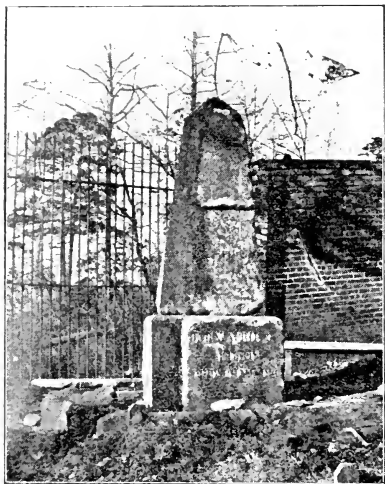
\*It is a remarkable coincidence that John Adams, of Massachusetts, the second president of the United States, who seconded the resolutions offered by Lee, and was one of the signers of the Declaration, died on the same day and almost at the same hour.

while the country was celebrating the fiftieth anniversary of the immortal Declaration which he wrote, and here he sleeps his last sleep. The government has erected a monument above his grave, on which is inscribed, by his own request, that he was the author of the Declaration of Independence, the Bill for Religious Freedom, and the Father of the University.

**Efforts to Explore the West.**—Mr. Jefferson had long been impressed with the great value of the vast region lying along the Pacific coast, and wished to have it explored and its boundaries fixed. While he was minister to France he met a famous traveller named Ledyard, who entered into his views and agreed to go and explore the western half of our country. It was decided that he should travel through Russia, cross Behring Straits, and make his way southward along the North American coast. The great Empress Catherine gave him a passport through her dominions,

but some of her high officials, being opposed to permitting a foreigner to travel through Russia, determined to murder him. Ledyard, learning of his danger, returned to Paris, and told Mr. Jefferson he could not attempt the expedition, and thus for a time the project slumbered.

**Lewis and Clarke's Expedition.**—In 1804, however, Mr. Jefferson determined on another attempt. He was then president, and he selected his private secretary, Meriwether Lewis, of Albemarle County, Virginia, to lead the party. Lewis had been an officer of the army, and his chosen



TOMB OF JEFFERSON.



companion was Captain William Clarke, a brother of General George Rogers Clarke, of Virginia, who, you remember, conquered the Northwest. Their party consisted of thirty-seven young men, a negro boy and a dog. They set out for the headwaters of the Missouri, paddling up that river till they came to the mouth of the Yellow Stone. Lewis sent Clarke, with some of the party to explore the Yellow Stone, while he, with the rest, went up the Missouri. An old Indian told him of the great falls of the river—that when he heard the roaring of the waters and came to a tall tree, where for many years the eagles had built their nests, he would be near the cataract, beyond which was the dividing ridge of the waters flowing east and those flowing west. One night, while he lay in his blanket on the ground, the wind, blowing gently down the river, brought to his ears the noise of rushing water, and he knew he had reached the falls. Next morning, as he went on his way, the sound growing louder and louder, he saw an eagle soaring high above him, and before nightfall he came within sight of the falls of the Missouri.



MERIWETHER LEWIS.

**Journey to the Pacific.**—Clarke and his party soon joined him, and together they went on their toilsome way toward the shores of the Pacific. This was the first attempt to cross the continent of North America. For over two years they journeyed through the wilderness far from home and friends, and no tidings were heard of them during that time. When they reached home only one of the party was missing, he having died during their long absence. Lewis and Clarke, together with thirty-six men, the negro boy and the dog, returned home in safety.

**Trial of Aaron Burr.**—Another event of national interest which occurred during Mr. Jefferson's presidency was the famous trial of Aaron Burr, which took place in Rich-

mond in 1807. Burr had been an officer in the Revolutionary army and vice-president of the United States during Jefferson's first term. He was a man of great ability, but utterly unscrupulous in character. He had schemed to found an empire in the West, of which he was to be president. He was arrested and his trial created intense excitement. In Virginia the feeling for and against him was very strong, and much antagonism was aroused.



JOHN MARSHALL.

### Chief-Justice Marshall. — Chief-Justice

Marshall presided over the trial, which was had in the Hall of the House capitol, and through-ducted affairs withness and justice. He notwithstanding his have a perfectly fair jury brought in a ver- and Burr was re- reer and his life were ed the remainder of and loneliness, prac- home and friends.

**Judge Marshall.**— a very remarkable an officer in the Revo- to France, war and sec- and for til his death justice of Court of the His has the greatest

that day, while his personal character was so high that no man could say a word against it. Absorbed as he ever

of Delegates, in the out its length con- characteristic calm- insisted that Burr, grave offence, should and just trial. The dict of "not proven," leased; but his ca- ruined, and he pass- his days in poverty tically an exile from

### Character of

Judge Marshall was man. He had been lution, ambassador secretary of retary of state, years and un- was the chief- the Supreme United States. been called intellect of



*J Marshall*

was with the great affairs of the nation, he was often quite helpless in the common incidents of daily life, and many anecdotes are told of his abstraction and absence of mind.

**Anecdote.**—On one occasion he was driving along a country road when he found his path blocked by a large tree which had fallen across it, and, seeing no way out of the difficulty, he sat quietly waiting for assistance. After awhile a negro came by, to whom he related his difficulties. The boy immediately took the horse by the bridle, and leading it around the tree, set him safely on his road again. The chief-justice thanked him gravely, and told him he would leave some money for him at a country store further on. That evening the negro presented himself at the store, and the proprietor duly paid him the money Judge Marshall had left for him. As he pocketed the coin the boy remarked: "That old man sho'ly is a gentleman, if he ain't got much sense!"

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What question was now presented to the colonies?
2. What was Virginia's position?
3. Tell about the convention of 1787.
4. What prominent Virginians favored and who opposed the adoption of the new Constitution?
5. What was the result?
6. Who was elected the first president?
7. What is said of Jefferson?
8. What institution of learning did he found?
9. Tell the anecdotes related of him.
10. What did he refuse?
11. When and where did he die?
12. What is inscribed on his tomb?
13. Who made the first effort to explore the region on the Pacific?
14. Whom did he employ, and why did he not succeed?
15. What expedition set out in 1804?
16. Tell of their journey.
17. Who was Aaron Burr?
18. Tell of his trial and the result.
19. What can you tell about Chief-Justice Marshall?
20. What anecdote is told of him?

## CHAPTER XXIII.

DEATH OF WASHINGTON AND HENRY—VIRGINIA PRESIDENTS—NEGRO INSURRECTIONS—SLAVERY AND THE SLAVE TRADE.

**Death of Henry and Washington.**—In 1799 Virginia lost a statesman and a soldier. In June of that year Patrick Henry died, and Washington followed him in December. Together they had achieved a mighty work, and though widely different in their personality, they had been one in their patriotism and loyalty to Virginia. Patrick Henry, in his will, wrote : “ I have now disposed of all my property to my family. There is one thing I wish I could give them, and that is the Christian religion. If they had that (and I had not given them one shilling) they would be rich; and if they have not that (and I had given them all the world) they would be poor.”

**Presidents from Virginia.**—Of the first five presidents of the United States four were Virginians. Washington, Jefferson, Madison and Monroe in turn filled that high office, each of them serving two terms, so that for the thirty-six years succeeding the formation of the government Virginians held the presidency for thirty-two years.



JAMES MONROE.

**“ The Era of Good Feeling.”**—When he was first elected Monroe received the vote of every State but one, and when re-elected, only one individual vote was cast against him, and the period of his administration is known as the “Era of Good Feeling.” From 1789, when Washington took the oath of office, till 1861, Virginia continued to grow in wealth and prosperity.

**Burning of the Richmond Theatre.**—December 26th, 1811, an event occurred which sent a thrill of horror through the State and country, shrouded almost every home in Richmond in mourning, and cast its shadows upon homes and hearts far distant from the scene of the tragedy. This was the burning of the Richmond Theatre. A fashionable audience, composed largely of the most influential, distinguished, honored and wealthy of the Commonwealth, had assembled to witness the performance of a new drama, given for the benefit of a favorite actor, to be followed by the pantomime of "The Bleeding Nun," by Monk Lewis. The curtain had risen on the second act of the pantomime when sparks were seen to fall from the scenery in rear of the stage. It was announced that the house was on fire and the wildest disorder and excitement prevailed. The occupants of the pit escaped without difficulty. The spectators in the boxes crowded into the lobbies, the doors to which opening inward were effectually closed by the pressure of the excited and surging crowd. The building, a wooden structure, was soon wrapped in flames, and seventy persons are known to have perished, many of them of the most prominent and distinguished families of the city and State, among them George W. Smith, of Bathurst, Essex county, then governor of the Commonwealth. The dangers and terrors of the occasion were surpassed in pathos and sublimity by the exhibition of love and heroism afforded by the conduct of many of the victims. Parents rushed into the flames to save their children, husbands to save their wives, lovers, refusing to be separated, met death together in one of its most fearful forms. Some who had escaped in safety perished in the attempt to rescue some loved one who had been left behind. Among the latter was Governor Smith, who, having reached a place of safety, returned to the building to rescue his little son who had become separated from him in the throng. The son escaped. Monumental (Episcopal) Church, erected the following year (1812), now stands

upon the site, and a marble monument inscribed with the names of the victims, whose remains are interred beneath the portico, perpetuates their story.

**Servile Insurrections.**—But two other events marred the serenity of Virginia's progress—the insurrections of



AN OLD-TIME NEGRO CABIN.

the negro slaves under Gabriel and Nat Turner. The first was in 1800 and the last in 1831. No cause has been given for the action of these negroes. They themselves testified that they had good homes and received kind treatment. They seemed to have been seized with a sudden violent frenzy, just as the half-crazed cast Indian who "runs a muck." Both Gabriel and Nat Turner murdered men, women and children, sparing neither young nor old, and both

paid the just penalty of their dreadful crimes.

**Sentiment in Virginia in Relation to Slavery.**—These events made a deep impression in Virginia, where a desire for the emancipation of the negro and his return to his native land had long existed. From the early days of the colony the Virginians had often protested against

having slaves imported into their country. They sent one hundred and eleven petitions to the king and Parliament of England to stop the introduction of slaves, but that government found it too profitable a business to consent to its extinction.

**The Slave Trade Encouraged by England.**—Sir John Hawkins, one of the most noted of English sea captains, was so successful in the business of kidnapping slaves and selling them to the Spaniards that Queen Elizabeth,



GOING TO TOWN.

who is said to have shared in his profits, gave him a negro tied or bound for a crest. If the slave trade had been conducted by the Dutch alone, it would soon have been stamped out; but, fostered and protected by the power of the English throne, it was no easy task to annihilate it,

**New England and the Slave Trade.**—By and by, the settlers in New England, noting the large profits made in the buying and selling of slaves by the English and the Dutch, determined to have a share in the business also. The soil of their section was generally unproductive, and

its seasons short and unfruitful. There was little money to be made in agriculture, and little need of slaves to cultivate the crops. But the thrifty people who inhabited that region were not to be balked of their profits. If they had no use for the negro's services, they knew a land where he might be profitably employed, and so they



FREEDMAN'S CABIN.

brought hundreds to the Southern States to work in the cotton and tobacco fields. Vessel after vessel was fitted out in the ports of New England and sailed away to Africa to engage in this iniquitous traffic, which laid the foundation for many a colossal fortune in the Eastern States.



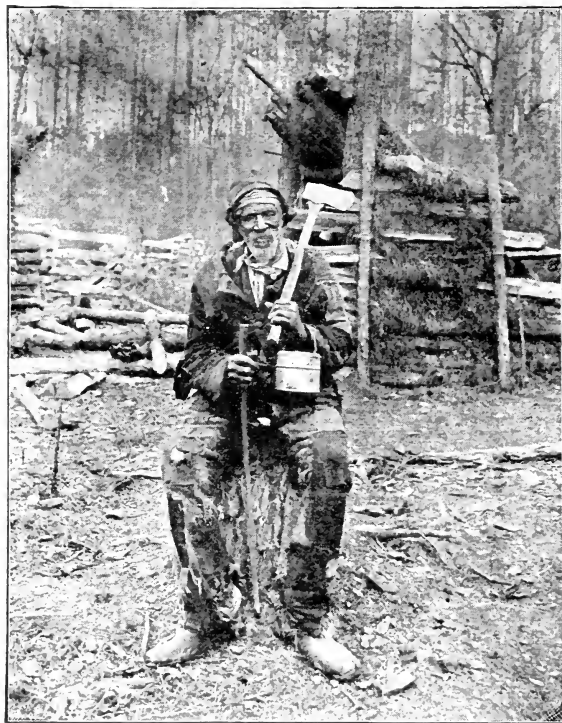
**The South Agricultural.**—Until within the last twenty years there were few manufactories in the South, and her mines were comparatively undeveloped. From Mason and Dixon's line to the Gulf of Mexico the South was one great garden. Her grain, tobacco, cotton, and sugar fields were her avenues to wealth, and it required many laborers to cultivate these crops; and so, year by year, the slaves increased and the evil grew.

**Sentiment in Virginia at the Beginning of the Century.** The feeling in Virginia against it continued. Long ago, in 1829, General John Minor, of Fredericksburg, had introduced a bill into the legislature for the emancipation of the slaves, which was lost. Mr. Jefferson had carried a bill forbidding further importation of negroes into the State; and when Virginia made to the United States the magnificent gift of the Northwest Territory, she had already enacted that no slaves should be carried there, and thus from the outset Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin, and Michigan were parts of a free territory, and could be admitted into the Union only as free States. Under President Monroe, Liberia was purchased with a view to exporting the negroes and settling them there. Monrovia, its chief town, was named in honor of the president, who was himself a member of the emancipation society.

**Emancipation of Slaves.**—Some of the prominent slaveholders of the State selected the most intelligent of their slaves, educated and freed them with a view to further steps in the matter, and many never bought nor sold one.

**Responsibility for Slavery.**—Negro slavery was the great sin and crime imputed by Old England and New England to Virginia, although they were the chief criminals in that business, the most criminal and cruel work of the people who have made the most cruel record of modern history. Weedon, the historian of the economic history of New England, tells of a deacon there who, after the arrival of his vessel with a cargo of slaves, would arise in the congregation to give thanks to God for the safe arrival of hundreds of benighted heathen, where they would be

within the influence of the blessed gospel. He tells how the New England slavers first made colored calicoes to send over to barter for captive negroes, but when it was found that the negroes used no calico nor any other raiment, they became the manufacturers of New England



NEGRO WOOD-CHOPPER AND SHANTY.

rum, which was found much more profitable in trading for slaves. This infamous traffic does not seem to have affected the social character of the New Englanders engaged in it, for we are told of a United States senator who carried it on up to the outbreak of the war between the States, when he moved down to the West Indies with it.

Captain Dunnington (a lieutenant commanding) captured a slaver coming out of the Congo with 900 negroes on board, and under the provisions of the tri-partite treaty between the United States, France and England the ship and cargo were sold, and the captain was hanged. It was only when the New England people found slavery no longer profitable that they became deeply moved by the sin of it, and, having first sold out to other people their stock of slaves, made it a penal offence, and charged that the Constitution was "a league with death and covenant with hell," because it recognized property in slaves.

### **The Refusal of the North to Surrender Fugitive Slaves.**

It should always be remembered that at the time of the adoption of the Constitution, slavery existed in all of the original thirteen States.\* It was fully recognized by that instrument, which contained a provision that "persons held to service or labor in one State escaping into another, shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such labor or service is due." An act known as "The Fugitive Slave Law" was passed by congress for the enforcement of this constitutional requirement, and the law was sustained by the Supreme Court of the United States in a case which was brought before it known as "The Dred Scott

\*Vermont claims the honor of having first excluded slavery by her bill of rights adopted in 1777. The census of 1790 shows seventeen slaves in the whole State.

Massachusetts never did by statute abolish slavery, and as late as 1833 her Supreme Court left it an open question when slavery was abolished in that State. The census of 1790 gives no enumeration of slaves in that State.

The statute books of New Hampshire seems to be silent on that subject, and the census of 1790 gives to this State one hundred and fifty-eight slaves, (158) and one of these was still reported in 1840.

Rhode Island had a law that all blacks born after March, 1784, should be free. In 1840 five of the old stock remained.

Connecticut had a similar plan of emancipation. She held 2759 slaves (the interest was too great for immediate emancipation).

Pennsylvania was in the same situation, having 3,737 slaves in 1790. Her interest was too great for immediate emancipation, so her act of emancipation in 1780, provided that all slaves born after that time should serve as slaves until they reached the age of twenty-eight after which time they were free. The census of 1840 showed sixty-four still in slavery. A negro woman was sold by the sheriff in Fayette County, Pennsylvania, in the year 1823, to pay debts.

A similar act was passed in the State of New York, and another act declaring slaves free after a certain date. In 1790 there were 21,324 slaves in the State.

In New Jersey in 1790 there were 11,423 slaves.

Virginia sent one hundred and eleven petitions to the English government to stop the slave trade, which were not heeded by that government, and when the Constitution of the United States was framed Virginia urged the immediately abolition of the slave trade. But by the vote of the New England States the extinction of the traffic was put off until 1808.

Case." Both the law of congress and the decision of the court became the subject of bitter denunciation from many of the Northern people, and in fourteen Northern States what were called "Personal Liberty Laws" were passed prohibiting their officers from aiding in the enforcement of the law, rendering it practically inoperative within their limits. Thus, you see, fourteen Northern



TOMB OF MONROE, IN HOLLYWOOD.

States, by solemn legislative enactment, declared their purpose not to fulfill their obligations under the Constitution, refused to obey the decision of the Supreme Court and undertook by State laws to nullify a law of congress. When the North refused to be longer

bound by the terms of the Constitution, the laws of the United States and the decisions of the Supreme Court, the people of the South knew that if the party which held these views ever got the control of the government that instrument, and the government framed under it, would no longer afford protection to their rights, liberty or property, for as the North's great statesman, Daniel Webster, had said, "a bargain broken on one side is broken on all sides."

**Slavery Not an Unmixed Evil.**—Slavery was not the unmixed evil it has been painted. Long years of kindness on the part of the master and mistress had its reward in much faithful and loyal service. During our late great war the fidelity of the negroes to the helpless and unprotected women and children all over the South was an honor to the Africans as a race and as individuals.

**The John Brown Raid.**—But all the while serious trouble was brewing, and the question of slavery was to be made a national issue. In October, 1859, John Brown, a fanatic from Connecticut, who had emigrated to Kansas to fight against the introduction of slavery in that territory, where he became notorious by his deeds of violence, organized his infamous raid into Virginia, his intention being to arouse and arm the negroes and induce them to murder men, women and children throughout the land; the result would have been terrible. At the head of seventeen white men and five negroes, he seized the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, containing over 100,000 stand of arms, and captured a number of prominent and peaceable citizens of the vicinity to be held as hostages.

**Brown's Act Without Justification.**—There is no justification for the barbarity of Brown's intention or the gravity of the evil he tried to accomplish. His enterprise failed. The negroes would not leave their masters, and he and his confederates barricaded themselves in the arsenal, where, after a determined resistance, they were taken by United States troops, sent for that purpose, under the command of Colonel Robert E. Lee, then an officer of the army, and delivered to the Virginia authorities for trial for their heinous crimes. They were allowed to select their own counsel and were fairly tried by courts of law. They confessed their crimes, and were hanged in Charlestown, Virginia.

**Indignation of the People.**—There was great indignation throughout the South against Brown and his associates. In Virginia the feeling was naturally very strong, but there was no desire nor intention in the State to secede from the Union because of this outrage.

**Election of Lincoln.**—Sectional feeling intensified until the Republican party had come into power, with President Abraham Lincoln at its head. It was this party which had passed the "Personal Liberty Laws," and in many ways showed itself most unfriendly to the South, and some of the Southern States decided to leave the

Union. South Carolina was the first to act, December 20, 1860, and the other cotton States soon followed, and in February, 1861, the Provisional Government of the Confederate States was organized at Montgomery, Ala., with the Hon. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, as president.

**Virginia Seeks to Maintain Peace.**—But Virginia refused to follow their example. She had laid the foundations of our great republic, and she could not consent to lend her aid to destroy it. She called a convention of her best men, and all her influence and efforts were still for the maintenance of peace.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

**President Lincoln's Call for Troops.** Unfortunately for the country, Mr. Lincoln lacked the wisdom and moderation so necessary at such a crisis. He was urged not to proceed to extreme measures, which would compel Virginia and the other border States

to secede. He refused to be advised, and called upon them to furnish troops with which to drive the seceded cotton States back and force them into submission.

**Virginia's Answer.**—Then at last Virginia, driven to an issue, gave him her answer. She would not send her sons to make war upon their brethren of the South; and so her act of secession was passed, and she cast in her fortunes with her sister States of the South, and for four years became the field on which were fought some of the fiercest battles history records. The whole Confederate force numbered 600,000, while the Federal armies amounted to 2,772,000, or more than four and a half to one. Such was the unequal contest in which we were about to be forced to engage.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. What loss did Virginia sustain in 1799?
2. What did Patrick Henry say in his will?

3. Name the first four presidents from Virginia.
4. Who was the second president, and from what State was he?
5. What vote did Monroe receive, and what was the period of his administration called?
6. What events occurred in Virginia which disturbed for a time her progress?
7. What was the early feeling in Virginia in regard to slavery?
8. What country encouraged the slave trade?
9. Why did New England engage in it?
10. Of what did the wealth of the South consist?
11. What was the feeling in Virginia as to slavery at the beginning of the century?
12. What was the feeling between masters and slaves?
13. What happened in Virginia in October, 1859?
14. Tell of John Brown and his fate.
15. What was the effect of Brown's raid?
16. What instrument recognized slavery?
17. What did it provide as to fugitive slaves?
18. What law did Congress pass to enforce this provision?
19. What did the Supreme Court decide?
20. What did many of the Northern people think of the law and of the Court?
21. How many Northern States passed laws refusing to obey the law or the decision of the court?
22. What did the people of the South then know?
23. What had Daniel Webster said?
24. What party elected the president in 1860?
25. What did South Carolina and some of the Southern States do?
26. What did Virginia do?
27. What precipitated the war?
28. What answer did Virginia give?

## CHAPTER XXIV.

PRESIDENT LINCOLN—BAD FAITH AS TO SUMTER—PREPARATIONS FOR INVASION—THE SOUTH FORCED TO DEFEND ITSELF.

**Abraham Lincoln.**—The President of the United States, Abraham Lincoln, was one of the most remarkable men of this century. Born of humble parentage in Kentucky, his early years were passed in narrow and vicious circumstances. He never knew a mother's care, but struggled up to manhood by his own strong hand and inflexible will, and made himself President of the United States at a time when the hatred of the North to the South was fiercest.

**His Inaugural Address.**—Escorted to the Capitol by an armed military force, he took the oath of office March 4,



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

1861, and in his inaugural address announced that he considered "the Union unbroken," and declared his purpose to "take care that the laws of the Union should be faithfully executed in all the States"; and also "to collect the public revenue" at the ports of the seceded States, as well as to "hold, occupy and possess" all the forts, arsenals and other property which had been held by the Federal government, all of which (except Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, Fort Pickens at Pensacola, and the forts on the Florida Keys) were at that time in possession of the seceded States, whose commissioners were then, and had been for some time, in Washington, empowered to treat with the Federal authorities for a peaceful and amicable adjustment, upon the principles of equity and justice, of all matters relating to the common property and public debt.



**Note of Confederate Commissioners.**—Eight days after Mr. Lincoln's inauguration, these commissioners addressed a note to Mr. W. H. Seward, Secretary of State, setting forth the object of their mission and assuring him of the earnest desire of the people of the Confederate States for a peaceful solution of all the questions at issue.

**Mr. Seward's Reply.**—To this no official answer was made, but through Mr. John A. Campbell, one of the justices of the Supreme Court of the United States, and a native of Alabama, the most positive assurances were given that Mr. Seward was "in favor of peace," that "Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, would be evacuated in ten days, even before a letter could go from Washington to Montgomery," and "as regarded Fort Pickens, in Florida, notice would be given of any design to alter the status there."

**A Change of Mind.**—The administration, however, soon changed its mind, if, indeed, it had ever entertained the views expressed by Mr. Seward, and it became known that a fleet of seven ships, carrying 285 guns and 2,400 men, had been fitted out at the navy-yards of New York and Norfolk, and had put to sea. Fearing its purpose was to reinforce Fort Sumter, the Confederate commissioners waited upon Judge Campbell and asked for information on this point. He immediately addressed a letter to Mr. Seward asking if the assurances as to Sumter were well or ill-founded. Mr. Seward replied, "Faith as to Sumter fully kept; wait and see." This was on the 7th of April, when the fleet with reinforcements for Sumter was nearing Charleston harbor. On the 8th Governor Pickens, of South Carolina, was notified by the Washington government that a fleet was on its way to reinforce the fort "peaceably, if permitted; but forcibly, if necessary."

**A Declaration of War.**—This was virtually a declaration of war against the Confederate States, and, when communicated to the Confederate government at Montgomery, General Beauregard, commanding at Charleston, was directed to demand the immediate evacuation of the fort,

and if refused to reduce it, "if he had no doubt of the authenticity of the notice of the Washington government to supply Fort Sumter by force."

**Demand for the Evacuation of Sumter.**—The demand for the evacuation of the fort was made April 11, to which Major Anderson replied in writing that it would not be complied with, but said verbally to the messenger, "I will await the first shot; if you do not batter us to pieces, we will be starved out in a few days." When this was reported to the Confederate government at Montgomery, the secretary of war replied as follows: "Do not desire needlessly to bombard Fort Sumter. If Major Anderson will state the time at which, as indicated by himself, he will evacuate, and agree that in the meantime he will not use his guns against us, unless ours shall be employed against Fort Sumter, you are authorized thus to avoid the effusion of blood. If this or its equivalent be refused, reduce the fort as your judgment decides most practicable." To this Major Anderson refused to accede, and was accordingly notified that fire would be opened upon the fort at 4:30 on the morning of April 12th. During the bombardment the fleet drew near, but did not participate in the action.

**Sumter Surrendered.**—At the end of thirty-two hours Major Anderson consented to capitulate, and was granted the most liberal and honorable terms, the garrison being allowed to march out with their colors and their music, and to retain all private and company property. Nothing was done to degrade or humiliate them.

**Effect in the North.**—The capitulation of Sumter was used to inflame the Northern mind. The cry was raised that the flag, the emblem of the Federal Union, had been fired upon; the Confederates were denounced as traitors, and those who through long years had declared the Union "a covenant with death and a league with hell" became the loudest advocates of a "perpetual and indestructible union," which must be maintained at all hazards. The responsibility for the war was shifted from those who

began it, by the attempt to forcibly reinforce Sumter, to the Confederates, who, having due notice of the coming invasion, took such measures as would prevent the lodgment of a hostile army in the strongest fortress within their territory, acting upon the well-established principle of public law that "the aggressor in war is not the first who uses force, but the first who renders force necessary."

**Lincoln's Call for Troops.**—President Lincoln issued his proclamation April 15th, calling upon the several States



THE WHITE-HOUSE OF THE CONFEDERACY, NOW THE CONFEDERATE MEMORIAL BUILDING.

for their respective quotas of 75,000 men "to suppress combinations in the seceded States too powerful for the law to contend with." The governors of the Northern States promptly responded to the call, and the governors of the slaveholding States as promptly declined; for which they had a precedent in the action of the governor of Massachusetts, who, in the war of 1812, refused the

request of the president of the United States for its quota of militia to defend the country against a foreign foe. Armies began to be gathered at Washington under General Scott; at Chambersburg, Pa., under General Patterson; near Wheeling, Va., under General McClellan, and under General Butler at Fortress Monroe. These four armies were to be directed against Virginia, and the Confederates made haste to meet the threatened attack. Troops were sent to Western Virginia under General Robert S. Garnett. General Joseph E. Johnston began organizing an army at Harper's Ferry, General Beauregard at Manassas, and General Huger at Norfolk.

**Capital Removed to Richmond.**—On the 21st of May, 1861, Richmond became the Confederate capital, and for four years was the prize for which contending armies struggled, and at her gates some of the bloodiest battles of modern times were fought; but I cannot do more than present a brief outline of these.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Tell what is said of Lincoln.
2. What did he say in his inaugural address?
3. For what purpose did the Confederates send commissioners to Washington?
4. What assurances did they receive from Mr. Seward through Judge Campbell?
5. What did the Lincoln administration do?
6. What did the Confederate commissioners fear?
7. What reply did Mr. Seward make to Judge Campbell when he asked for information?
8. When was this?
9. When did the Washington government notify Governor Pickens, of South Carolina, of its purpose to reinforce Sumter "by force if necessary?"
10. Where was the fleet then?
11. What did the notice to Governor Pickens virtually amount to?
12. What steps were taken by the Confederates to prevent the reinforcements reaching Sumter?
13. Tell of the bombardment and surrender.
14. What was the effect on the North?
15. What proclamation did Mr. Lincoln issue and when?
16. What four armies began to be organized and where?
17. Against what State were they to be directed?
18. How did the Confederates prepare to meet them?
19. What city became the Confederate capital and what is said about it?

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

## CHAPTER XXII.—The Future Government.

Virginia for Union.  
The Convention of 1787.  
The Virginia Convention.  
Washington, President.  
Thomas Jefferson.  
University of Virginia.  
Anecdotes of Jefferson.  
Declined a Third Term.  
Efforts to Explore the West.  
Lewis and Clarke's Expedition  
Journey to the Pacific.  
Trial of Aaron Burr.  
Chief-Justice Marshall.  
Character of Judge Marshall.  
Anecdote of Judge Marshall.

## CHAPTER XXIII.—Deaths of Henry and Washington.

Presidents from Virginia.  
"The Era of Good Feeling."  
Burning of the Richmond Theatre—Servile Insurrections  
Sentiment in Virginia in Relation to Slavery.  
The Slave-Trade Encouraged by England.  
New England and the Slave-Trade.  
The South Agricultural.  
Sentiment in Virginia at the Beginning of the Century.  
Emancipation of Slaves.  
Responsibility for Slavery,  
The Refusal of the North to Surrender Fugitive Slaves.  
Slavery Not an Unmixed Evil.  
The John Brown Raid.  
Brown's Act without Justification.  
Indignation of the People.  
Election of Lincoln.  
Virginia Seeks to Maintain Peace.  
President Lincoln's Call for Troops.  
Virginia's Answer.

## CHAPTER XXIV.—Abraham Lincoln—His Inaugural Address.

Note of Confederate Commissioners.  
Mr. Seward's Reply.  
A Change of Mind.  
A Declaration of War.  
Demand for the Evacuation of Sumter.  
Sumter Surrendered.  
Effect in the North.  
Lincoln's Call for Troops.  
Capital Removed to Richmond.

## CHAPTER XXV.

## SOME OF THE EVENTS OF THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.

**Big Bethel.**—The first battle which occurred in Virginia was fought at Big Bethel, on the Peninsula, June 10, 1861, where 1,000 Confederates, under General John B. Magruder, were attacked by 3,000 Federals, belonging to



BATTLE OF BIG BETHEL.

the army of General B. F. Butler, commanding at Fortress Monroe. The Federals were repulsed with a loss of seventy-six men. The Confederate loss was one killed and seven wounded.

**First Battle of Manassas.**—General Joseph E. Johnston was holding Patterson's greater army in check when he



TURN OF THE TIDE AT MANASSAS.

found that McDowell, with 50,000 men, was advancing to attack Beauregard at Manassas Junction. Making a feint attack upon Patterson, Johnston joined his forces to Beauregard's, which were already engaged with the enemy, and fell upon McDowell July 21, 1861, routing his great army, and driving it in panic to Washington city. The whole Confederate army in this battle numbered 30,000 men.

**Advance of McClellan.**—McClellan succeeded McDowell in command of the great army of the Union. He assembled 110,000 men at Old Point early in 1862. Magruder, with 11,000 Confederates, held him in check until Johnston came down with his army from Manassas, united his forces with Magruder's, checked the advance of McClellan at Williamsburg, and took position for the defence of Richmond.



P. G. T. BEAUREGARD.



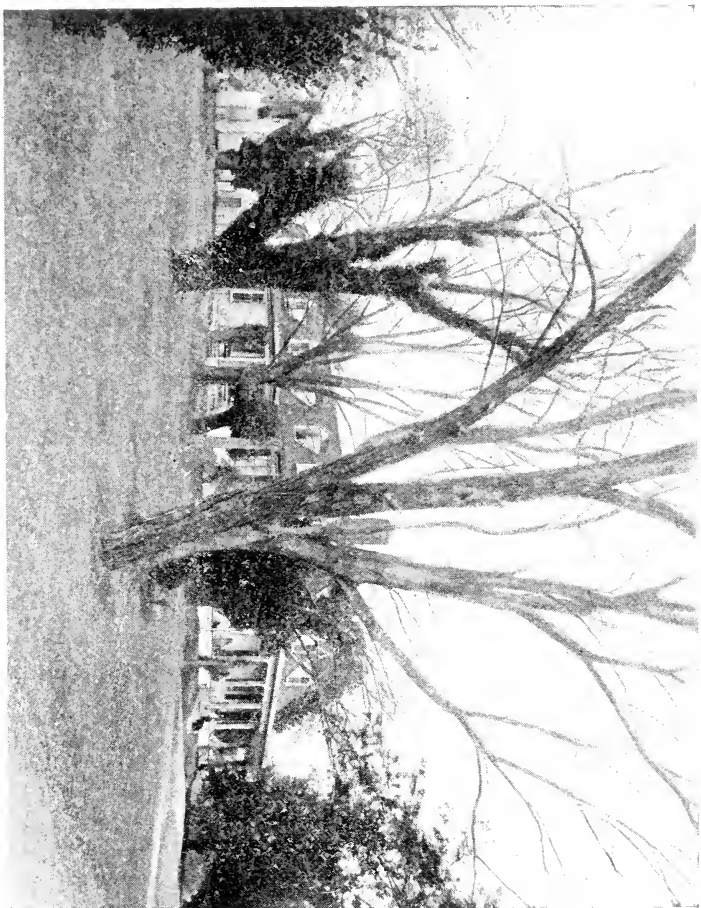
JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

**Battle of Seven Pines.**—McClellan's great army straddled the Chickahominy River, when Johnston fell upon it, and was in the act of destroying one wing of it when he was struck down by grievous wounds, and General Robert E. Lee was assigned to the command of the army. McClellan moved with great slowness and caution, awaiting reinforcements, for which he continuously called.

**Jackson's Valley Campaign.**—These were prevented from being sent him by the terror inspired at Washington by the movements of Stonewall Jackson, who had been brilliantly successful in the Valley, where he had successively defeated four armies under Milroy, Fremont, Banks and Shields in every battle save Kernstown (the first of the series of battles fought in that campaign) where Shields, with much superior forces, repulsed Jackson.

**Battles Around Richmond.**—Lee now called Jackson to





Old Plantation Home.

join him, and at Mechanicsville, June 26, 1862, fell upon McClellan, defeating him there, and subsequently at Gaines' Mill, Savage Station, and Frazier's Farm. McClellan made his last stand at the strong position of Malvern Hill, where, on the evening of July 1st, he repulsed Lee's assault, but during the night he resumed his flight to the shelter of his fleet at Harrison's Landing, upon James River, many miles east of Richmond. These are called the Seven Days' Battles. General John Pope was then placed in command of the Army of the Potomac, and McClellan retired for a time.

**Second Manassas.**—General Pope announced to his army "that his headquarters would be in his saddle, and



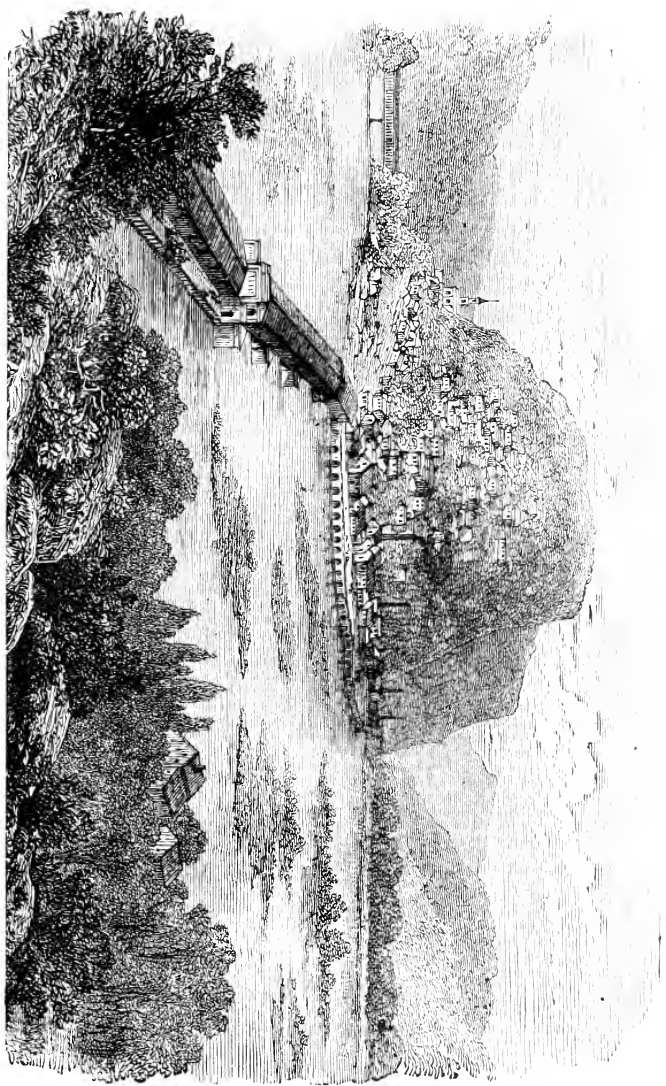
M'CLELLAN.

that he was accustomed to see only the backs of his enemy." But, as Pope was of all men the most disbelieved, nobody was alarmed or surprised when, in a short time, Lee fell upon him just where a little over one year before Joe Johnston and Beauregard had so utterly routed McDowell, and sent Pope and his great army in panic and utter confusion back to Washington city. McClellan was then

again called to command the Army of the Potomac. In about one week he had restored its order, and marched to intercept Lee, who was in Maryland, threatening an invasion of Pennsylvania.

**Capture of Harper's Ferry.**—Lee's orders for his proposed operations fell into McClellan's hands by some extraordinary mischance, and were of great value to him in guiding his movements. Lee sent Jackson to capture Harper's Ferry, which he did quickly, taking over 11,000 prisoners and vast stores.

**Battles of Boonsboro' and Sharpsburg.**—Lee checked McClellan at Boonsboro', took position on the field of Sharpsburg, and, with less than 35,000 men, including Jackson's corps, fought one of the fiercest battles of the great war against an army of over 80,000 under one of



Harder's Ferry.

the ablest of the Federal generals. A part of Jackson's troops, under A. P. Hill, did not reach the field from Harper's Ferry until the afternoon (September 17), while the battle was raging. The arrival of Hill's forces, flushed with victory, decided the day. McClellan withdrew from the field, which Lee held unmolested for twenty-four hours, during which he buried the dead Confederates and Federals. Having sent over the Potomac all of the rich stores gathered from Pennsylvania, he crossed that river unmolested by the enemy. The second day after the Army of Northern Virginia recrossed the Potomac\* McClellan attempted to follow Lee, but was terribly repulsed at the river, and driven back into Maryland. A. P. Hill commanded the rear guard in this defeat. Lee then rested his army in a pleasant camp near Winchester.



A. P. HILL.

**Visit of British Officers.**—A number of British officers visited the Army of Northern Virginia at this time, and were much impressed by the greatness of Lee and his army. Lord Wolseley, since commander-in-chief of the British forces, a brilliant writer, thus speaks of Lee: "Every injury that it was possible to inflict the Northerners have heaped upon him. Notwithstanding this, in speaking of them he neither evinced any bitterness of feeling nor gave utterance to a single violent expression. He spoke as a man proud of his victories won by his country, and confident of ultimate success, under the blessing of the Almighty."

**General Lee's Address.**—Lee published this grand address to his army and went into camp near Winchester, where they all rested for many weeks:

\*On the evening of the battle Lee asked General Longstreet, "How has your corps fared to-day?" "The ground is covered by my dead and wounded. I have but a skirmish line left, and I hope you will cross into Virginia to-night." Lee then asked Jackson the same question, and received the same reply as to the condition of his corps, and as to the propriety of crossing the Potomac. He next asked Hill, and received a like answer. Lee then said, "Gentlemen, get in your stragglers; be ready to renew the battle in the morning. I shall not cross the Potomac to-night."

"In reviewing the achievements of the army during the present campaign, the commanding general cannot withhold the expression of his admiration of the indomitable courage it has displayed in battle and the cheerful endurance of privation and hardships on the march.

"Since your great victories around Richmond you have defeated the enemy at Cedar Mountain, expelled him from the Rappahannock, and after a conflict of three days utterly repulsed him on the plains of Manassas and forced him to take shelter within the fortifications around his capital. Without halting for repose you crossed the Potomac, stormed the heights of Harper's Ferry, made prisoners of more than eleven thousand six hundred men, and captured upward of seventy pieces of artillery, all their small-arms and other munitions of war. While one corps of the army was thus engaged the other insured its success by arresting at Boonsboro' the combined armies of the enemy, advancing under their favorite general to the relief of their beleaguered comrades.

"On the field of Sharpsburg, with less than one-third his numbers, you resisted from daylight until dark the whole army of the enemy, and repulsed every attack along his entire front of more than four miles in extent.

"The whole of the following day you stood ready to resume the conflict on the same ground, and retired next morning without molestation across the Potomac.

"Two attempts subsequently made by the enemy to follow you across the river have resulted in his complete discomfiture and his being driven back with loss. Achievements such as these demanded much valor and patriotism. History records few examples of greater fortitude and endurance than this army has exhibited, and I am commissioned by the President to thank you in the name of the Confederate States for the undying fame you have won for their arms.

"Much as you have done, much more remains to be accomplished. The enemy again threatens us with invasion, and to your tried valor and patriotism the country looks with confidence for deliverance and safety. Your past exploits give assurance that this confidence is not misplaced.

"R. E. LEE,

*"General Commanding."*

**McClellan Removed.**—After his defeat at Sharpsburg McClellan, whom General Lee considered the ablest of the Federal generals, entered Virginia by way of Warrenton, where he received an order from Lincoln relieving him of his command and appointing General Burnside to command the Army of the Potomac.



BURNSIDE.

**Battle of Fredericksburg.**—Burnside made his advance upon Richmond by way of Fredericksburg, where Lee met him December 13, 1862. Burnside had 100,000 men, Lee had 60,000, and defeated him more completely than he had

defeated his predecessors. He lost nearly 15,000 men, and escaped back to the other side of the river. It was a glorious battle to look upon—both armies were within full view of each other, and each could see every move of the other.

**Battle of Chancellorsville.**—Hooker was then appointed to take Burnside's place. And in May, 1863, was fought the most remarkable battle of this century. Hooker crossed the Rappahannock about twenty-five miles



HOOKEER.

above Fredericksburg with 100,000 men—as he said, “the finest army upon the planet.” He had placed Sedgwick, with 25,000 men, upon the heights overlooking Fredericksburg, whence, as soon as the battle should be joined, he would fall upon Lee's right flank and rear. Lee's whole force amounted to 40,000 men. He posted Early near Fredericksburg, with 7,000 men, to hold Sedgwick in check, sent Jackson by a long detour of fifteen miles to fall upon Hooker's right, while he remained in Hooker's front with the rest of his army—some 12,000 men.

**Jackson's Flank Movement.**—On the evening of May 2d Jackson, having successfully completed his march around the Federals, wrote this, his last report, to Lee—

“NEAR 3 P. M., MAY 2, 1863.

“GENERAL: The enemy has made a stand at Chancellor's, which is about two miles from Chancellorsville. I hope so soon as practicable to attack.

“I trust that an ever kind Providence will bless us with success.

“Respectfully, T. J. JACKSON, Lieutenant-General.

“General Robert E. Lee

“P. S.—The leading division is up, and the next two appear to be well closed.

T. J. J.”

—and fell like a thunder-bolt upon Hooker's unsuspecting right, crushed it in utter rout back upon Chancellorsville, and by night Hooker was cut off from every ford of the river save one, and his whole army in confusion and demoralization. The next morning Lee drove him from his

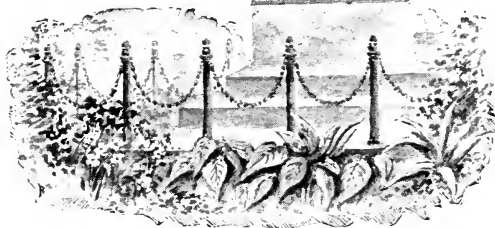


T. J. Jackson,  
Sgt. Genl.,





position at the Char United States ford, wh began to entrench him around him on all side except by falling now turned his at- who had crossed the burg, with 22,000 small force which that place, and was Chancellorsville. sion and a part of under General Mc- confronting Hooker, the column of Sedg- afternoon, at Salem detailing the remain- Anderson's division, back until darkness conflict. Under wick recrossed the



STATUE OF JACKSON, PRESENTED TO THE STATE  
BY ENGLISH ADMIRERS.

no avenue of escape back over the river, attention to Sedgwick, river at Fredericks- men, driven off the held the heights at now advancing on Detailing one divi- another, the whole, Laws, from his army he met and checked wick, on Sunday Church. Next day, ing three brigades of he pushed Sedgwick put an end to the cover of night Sedg- river at Banks's ford.

Next morning Lee returned to Chancellorsville to capture or destroy Hooker's army, but during the night Hooker had withdrawn his entire army

over the river; and "the greatest army on the planet," had given Lee the greatest victory of this century.

**Death of Jackson.**—But it had been won at a fearful cost, for on the evening of the 2d, Stonewall Jackson, in the very moment of victory, had fallen by a shot from his own troops. He was with difficulty borne from the field,

his litter-bearers were twice shot down, and he fell heavily, fatally injuring his lungs by the fall. He was taken to the house of Mr. Chandler, one mile from Guinea's



MEADE.

Station, on the railroad between Richmond and Fredericksburg. The house being already occupied by sick and wounded soldiers, Jackson was placed in an office in the yard, where he died Sunday, May 10th, the eighth day after his wounding. Lee wrote him: "Could I have directed events, I should have chosen for the good of the country, to have been disabled in your stead. I congratulate

you upon the victory, which is due to your skill and energy." Jackson, when he read it, said: "General Lee should give the glory to God."

**Advance into Pennsylvania—Gettysburg.**—After defeating Hooker, Lee carried the war into Pennsylvania. Meade had succeeded Hooker in command of the Army of the Potomac. Lee attacked him upon the heights of Gettysburg, and in a three days' battle was repulsed with great loss. This was the only defeat the Army of Northern Virginia ever received in four years of constant action. But its *morale* was not broken, and it took up a position within a few miles of the Army of the Potomac and awaited attack, but no attack was made, and in ten days Lee recrossed the river with his army unmolested.

**War Again Transferred to Virginia.**—Meade also moved down into Virginia and manœuvred in an inconsequent way against Lee—once he crossed the Rapidan as if to give battle, but when Lee accepted the gage, he hastily retreated over the river. In the spring of 1864 General Grant, the ablest of all of the Federal commanders, was



GENERAL U. S. GRANT.

appointed lieutenant-general, given command of all the Federal armies, and took command of the Army of the Potomac in person.

**Grant's Wilderness Campaign.**—Grant conducted his operations with great daring and ability; he handled his great armies in the difficult country as none of his predecessors had done. In every great battle Lee beat him, but Grant's heavy losses were quickly made good by fresh troops, although his killed and wounded numbered more than Lee's whole army. From the Wilderness to the James River Grant lost over 80,000 men. At Cold Harbor he lost 13,000 men, and his soldiers refused to fight any more, and Lincoln called his Cabinet together to consider the question of further war or peace.

**Siege of Petersburg.**—Grant crossed the James and laid siege to Petersburg, where Lee promptly met him, and for many months longer kept up the hopes of the Confederacy.

**The Cadets at New Market.**—While Grant was fighting his way from the Rappahannock to the James, General Sigel, with 7,000 men, advanced up the Valley of Virginia. He was encountered near New Market, May 15, 1864, by General Breckinridge, with about 4,000 Confederates. The ground was quite open, each army could see the extent of the other's line, Sigel enveloping both flanks of Breckinridge. The battalion of Cadets of the Virginia Military Institute, composed of youths under the military age, two hundred and thirty strong, occupied the centre of the Confederate line, in front of Sigel's artillery of nine guns. The fire of this battery was very heavy, and General Breckinridge ordered the Cadets to take it. The little battalion moved out as if on parade in a perfect line. The Federal guns poured grape and canister into them, and many were cut down, but their line never wavered. When a front man fell, his rear-rank man took his place. The Federals saw them draw nearer and nearer with wonder and admiration. At last they rushed with a yell upon the guns. Such boyish voices were never before heard in battle.

The cannoneers broke and fled; a few of the stoutest tried to stand to their guns, and were actually bayoneted by these brave boys, some of whom were only fourteen years of age, and but five feet high. In all the war a charge like



BRECKINRIDGE.

this was never seen. General Breckinridge was a very great man and a veteran of many hard-fought battles; but when the enemy broke and fled, he wept like a woman as he rode about the field where fifty of the brave boys lay dead or wounded. In all of the wars of America, no event has ever equalled this in splendid exhibition of disciplined gallantry and pathetic interest. The eight cadets who had been

killed were borne to the Institute by their sorrowing comrades, who have erected a monument over the graves where they sleep, and James Barron Hope, one of Virginia's poets, has written some beautiful verses to perpetuate their fame. The Sixty-second Virginia regiment, under their gallant colonel, Smith, veterans of many victories charged in line with the boys and shared the glory of the victory.

**Fall of Richmond.**—General Grant continued to extend his lines around Petersburg with the view of cutting the railroads by which supplies were brought to Lee's army, and hemming in Lee, whose force was now reduced to about 35,000 men, guarding entrenched lines over thirty-five miles in length. To foil this effort, Petersburg and Richmond were abandoned on the 3d of April, 1865. Lee's glorious army was reduced to 32,000 men, while Grant had under his orders 220,000. Lee moved off from Petersburg and endeavored to get to Danville, intending to unite his army with Johnston's in North Carolina. Failing in this because the supplies which he had ordered to be sent to Amelia Courthouse had by some blunder been sent on to Richmond, he then endeavored to get to Lynchburg to protract the struggle in the mountainous country.



most truly & affly yours  
R E Lee



**Surrender at Appomattox.**—Beset and overwhelmed, and without supplies, he reached Appomattox with only 8,800 armed men, the survivors of the grand Army of Northern Virginia. These Lee surrendered to Grant upon the 9th of April, 1865, and the great war between the States was ended in Virginia and virtually in every other State.

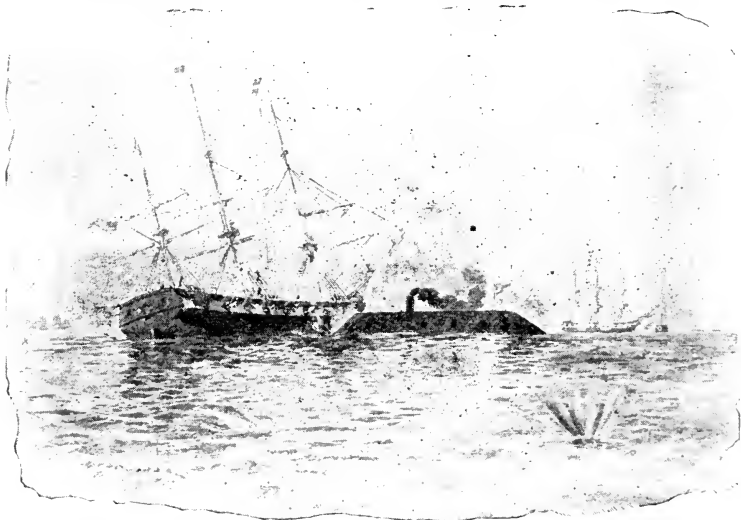
**The Confederate Ironclad Virginia.**—When the Federals evacuated Norfolk they destroyed the works and ves-



LEE LEAVING APPOMATTOX.

sels at the navy-yard, including the frigate *Merrimac*, which they burned and sunk. The Confederates raised, repaired and converted her into a powerful ironclad ram with a steel beak in her prow. Colonel John M. Brooke, of the Virginia Military Institute, prepared the plan. On March 8, 1862, as soon as completely ready for action, she steamed down to attack the Federal fleet, then lying in Hampton Roads, consisting of six Federal frigates and twelve gunboats. All fled save the *Cumberland* and *Congress*, which could not escape. The *Virginia* struck the *Cumberland*

with her steel ram, knocking a great hole in her side; but her men stood bravely to their guns while the ship was sinking. At the last moment the captain ordered his crew to leap overboard, and just in time. She went down with her flag flying, carrying the wounded men of her crew. The *Virginia's* steel beak was wrenched off and went down in the *Cumberland*. The *Beaufort*, Captain Parker, and the *Raleigh*, Captain Alexander, each with one gun, engaged the *Congress*. That ship endeavored to get



THE SINKING OF THE CUMBERLAND.

away, but could not, and, after great loss, ran up the white flag, which was the sign of surrender. While the white flag was flying and our boats were removing from the *Congress* the prisoners, they were fired upon by the Federal troops upon the shore. Admiral Buchanan, Lieutenant Minor and Colonel John Taylor Wood were severely wounded. Then the *Virginia* re-opened fire with hot shot upon the *Congress* and sunk her. In trying to escape the *Minnesota* ran aground beyond the good range of the *Virginia's* guns.



**Fight With the Monitor.**—Next morning the *Monitor*, a newly-invented, ironclad, turretted gunboat, arrived from New York, and, after a brief battle with the *Virginia*, ran off into shallow water, where the *Virginia* could not get at her. Then there was no enemy to fight; and as the *Virginia* was leaking badly from the break made when her beak was wrenched off, she went back to Norfolk to procure a better ram, and in about five weeks returned to attack the Federal fleet, then bombarding Sewell's Point. On seeing her approach, the whole fleet of six frigates and three ironclads fled again to the shoal water, under the protection of the guns of Fortress Monroe. The *Virginia* steamed about in the deep water as near to the Federal ships as she could get, and dared them to come out, but they would not venture. Then Commodore Tatnall sent the *Jamestown* and *Raleigh* to capture three transports which had, like the Federal fleet, run under the protection of the heavy batteries. This Lieutenants Barney and Alexander did so bravely that as they came by the French and British men-of-war with their prizes they were cheered. Every day for many days the *Virginia* came down into Hampton Roads to offer battle to the Federal fleet. But neither the *Monitor* nor any other ship would venture out. On the 11th of May, 1862, being unable to get the *Virginia* up James River, Admiral Tatnall destroyed her. A few years after the war the crew of the *Monitor* claimed \$200,000 prize money for destroying the *Virginia*. The House of Representatives passed the bill, but on receiving a statement of the facts from the Southern Historical Society, the Senate refused to agree to it. But ever since the war the impression has been made by Northern historians that great glory was won by the *Monitor*. The *Cumberland* had done more harm to the *Virginia* than all others, for she had, unintentionally it is true, carried off the steel beak of the *Virginia*, and then her captain (Morris) and all of his crew stood at their posts firing her guns until their ship went down, but with her colors flying.

**Brandy Station.**—The greatest cavalry battle of modern times was the battle at Brandy Station. It raged from sunup to sundown on a June day in 1863. General Stuart completely defeated the enemy and drove him back to his lines.

**A Remarkable Illustration of the Capacity of the People for Self-Government.**—One year after the war between the States broke out, one of the most remarkable illustrations of the capacity of our people for self-government that has ever been known was manifested. The Army of Northern Virginia and the Army of Tennessee had been in active service for one year, when a reorganization of the Confederate armies was ordered. In May, 1862, the Army of Northern Virginia was confronting a Federal army of three times its force, when the new election of regimental officers was held right in the presence of the enemy. Many were apprehensive as to the results of such a change of authority under circumstances so critical. It was feared lest officers who had strictly done their duty and enforced discipline should be thrown out of office, and others who had been electioneering for their places be chosen. Such fears were groundless to a great extent. There was but little excitement over the election, and but few changes were made, and the grandest achievements of the army followed this unusual event.



J. E. B. STUART.

**Our Private Soldiers.**—This is not to be wondered at when we consider the nature of our army—unlike the regular armies of other countries—the rank and file was composed largely of gentlemen of good breeding and education. When the Rockbridge Artillery marched from Lexington to the army, twenty-eight college graduates were mounted upon its horses and limber-boxes, and one company of infantry from the Northern Neck of Virginia had sixteen graduates of the Virginia Military Institute in its ranks.

**The Virginia Military Institute.**—That admirable school was of inestimable value to Virginia in the war, as it has been for so many years in the peaceful progress of our State. The Army of Northern Virginia was largely officered and educated by the alumni of this school, and over 250 of its graduates were killed in battle—more than the United States Academy at West Point has so lost.

**The Army of Northern Virginia.**—Under Generals Joe Johnston and Lee, the Army of Northern Virginia was always victorious. It never lost a battle in Virginia. So that the historian of the Army of the Potomac, an Englishman, Mr. Swinton, says of it: "Nor can there fail to arise the image of that other army that was the adversary of the Army of the Potomac, and which, who can ever forget that once looked upon it? That array of 'tattered uniforms and bright muskets'—that body of incomparable infantry, the Army of Northern Virginia, which for four years carried the revolt on its bayonets, opposing a constant front to the mighty concentration of power brought against it; which, receiving terrible blows, did not fail to give the like, and which, vital in all its parts, perished only with its annihilation."

#### QUESTIONS.

1. Where was the first battle fought in Virginia?
2. Who were the Confederate generals, and who the Federal general commanding at the first battle of Manassas?
3. Who took command of the Federal army after that rout?
4. Where did he assemble his army, and what were its numbers?
5. Who checked him on the Peninsula?
6. What other check did he receive?
7. Tell of the battle of Seven Pines.
8. Of Jackson's Valley campaign.
9. Who commanded in the battles around Richmond?
10. Name some of the battle-fields.
11. Who succeeded McClellan? What battle did he fight, and with what result.
12. To what State did General Lee transfer the war?
13. What battles were fought there?
14. What important capture made?
15. Who commanded the Federal army at Sharpsburg?
16. What did General Lee do after that battle?
17. Who visited him at this time?

18. What does Lord Wolseley say of him ?
19. What does General Lee say in his address to his army ?
20. What Federal general fought the battle of Fredericksburg ?
21. Tell about the battle of Chancellorsville.
22. What great loss did the Confederates sustain in that battle ?
23. Where did General Lee now carry the war ?
24. What great battle was fought there, and with what result ?
25. What Federal general commanded at Gettysburg ?
26. By whom was he relieved ?
27. What is said of Grant's Wilderness campaign ?
28. What city did Grant lay siege to ?
29. Where, when, and by whom was the battle of New Market fought ?
30. Tell the story of the cadets.
31. When was Richmond evacuated ?
32. What were the respective numbers of the two armies ?
33. Where and when did General Lee surrender, and how many men had he ?
34. What was the *Virginia* ?
35. Tell of her attack on Federal vessels and the result.
36. Describe her battle with the *Monitor*.
37. Tell of the capture of the transports.
38. What impression has been made by Northern historians as to the battle between the *Virginia* and *Monitor* ?
39. Who fought the battle of Brandy Station, and what is said of it ?
40. What illustration was given of the capacity of the people for self-government ?
41. What is said of the Confederate private soldier ?
42. Can you repeat what Mr. Swinton says of the Army of Northern Virginia ?

## CHAPTER XXVI.

THE CRUEL CONDUCT OF THE WAR—MEDICINES CONTRABAND—DESTRUCTION OF PRIVATE PROPERTY—HUNTER'S VANDALISM—DAHLGREN'S RAID—RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE SUFFERING OF PRISONERS—TREATMENT OF PRESIDENT DAVIS.

**Harsh Measures.**—The war had been conducted with extraordinary cruelty by the Lincoln government; the negro slaves had been set free and armed against us, when Mr. Lincoln was informed that Queen Victoria would recognize the independence of the Confederate States unless the slaves were freed.

**Medicines and Medical Supplies Contraband.**—The introduction of medicines and medical supplies, surgical instruments, etc., was prohibited; a cruel war measure, never before enforced by a civilized nation, save by the Duke of Wellington when commanding the British army in Spain.

**The Valley Devastated.**—General Sheridan, commanding in the Valley near the close of the war, boasted that he had so laid waste and devastated that rich and fertile region that "a crow flying over it would have to carry its rations."

**Sherman's Brutalities.**—Sherman's march from Atlanta to the sea and from Savannah to North Carolina was lighted by the flames of burning homesteads and disgraced by insults and indignities heaped upon defenceless non-combatants, women and children, which he justified by saying: "We are not only fighting hostile armies, but a hostile people, and must make old and young, rich and poor, feel the hard hand of war."

**Hunter's Vandalism.**—General David Hunter, a Virginian by birth, commanded an army which ravaged his native State and destroyed the homes of his kindred, amongst whom he had been born and reared. He moved along his course unopposed, and, among other barbarities,

burned the buildings and scientific apparatus of the Virginia Military Institute, and the private residence of Governor Letcher. General Jubal Early, ever ready in such an emergency, moved rapidly to Lynchburg, met Hunter's army in the suburbs of the city and drove it in rout out of the State. In March, 1894, that brave, devoted and able Virginian soldier was laid to his rest. His grave lies across the very spot where his line of battle lay that evening when he defeated Hunter and saved Lynchburg. Hunter



EARLY.

was pursued and constantly attacked by General McCausland and others until he made his escape into West Virginia in a pitiable plight.

**Dahlgren's Raid.**—While Kilpatrick was conducting a raid through Virginia in 1864, he detached Colonel Ulric Dahlgren, with about 100 men, to make a rush into Richmond—then apparently unguarded—to liberate the prisoners (some 20,000), murder the president and other officials of the government and do all the harm possible to the city. The home guards turned out very promptly, and the murderous band was met at Westham, about five miles from Richmond, by the employees of the Tredegar Company and other home guards. The Federals were defeated and driven off down towards King and Queen county, where a company of home guards and furloughed men encountered them. Dahlgren and others were killed and his whole command routed. Upon Dahlgren's body were found his orders in his own handwriting, which were photographed and sent to the Federal government. General Meade, who was a gentleman of honorable character, denied all responsibility for this incendiary and inhuman expedition, one result of which was the transfer of all of the prisoners from Richmond to Andersonville prison, already overcrowded and suffering from the scanty rations.

**The Suffering of Prisoners.**—The South has been often

most unjustly charged with cruelty to Northern prisoners. The exchange of prisoners was stopped by the Lincoln government, and the Confederates made every effort to have it renewed. The retention of Confederate prisoners was a war measure intended to weaken the Southern armies; for, with her smaller population and cut off from the rest of the world by the blockade of her ports, when her soldiers were captured the South had no others to take their places, and Mr. Stanton is reported to have said, "It is cheaper to feed them than to fight them." Not so with the North, which had not only her own population of 20,000,000, but the world from which to hire soldiers. The Federal soldiers in our hands fared just as our soldiers did, receiving the same rations. Under the conditions under which they necessarily lived, many thousands died, as was also the case in Northern prisons; and when, after the order to shorten their rations, the suffering captives at Andersonville were permitted to elect three of their number to go to President Lincoln and represent their condition (President Davis having paroled them for that purpose) they had to return to their prison and their anxious, sick and suffering comrades with the report that Mr.



MONUMENT NEAR YELLOW TAVERN,  
WHERE STUART FELL.

Lincoln was informed of their object, but they could never see him. Then President Davis offered to release 10,000 prisoners from Andersonville, with or without exchange, and President Lincoln failed for three months to send for them. The Lincoln government was responsible for the suffering of every prisoner who languished, sick-

ened and died in a Southern or a Northern prison. I tell you these facts because even now, when the whole record is open to the world, this charge of cruelty is frequently repeated against the South.

**The Treatment of President Davis.**—A few days after the war closed, Mr. Lincoln was assassinated by Booth,



LEE MONUMENT.

who was in no sense a Southern man, an act which was condemned as truly in the South as in the North, yet this was made the pretext for inflicting the most inhuman cruelties upon President Davis. A proclamation was issued offering \$100,000 for his capture. He was arrested



in Georgia and brought to Fortress Monroe, where he was ironed and imprisoned in a damp, dark casemate, deprived of all books and papers, guarded constantly by soldiers. Chief Justice Chase lawyers, having that he could be crime, after two he was released on health, but uncon-

**General Grant.**—

was naturally a very and who, by reason and ability, was all of the politicians, credit of protecting the rest of the Con- and they were al- their business. kindly feeling to and not one single harshness to our was ever a gainst showed ev- eration for ings when the surren- army at Ap- and for the the captu- erates, to

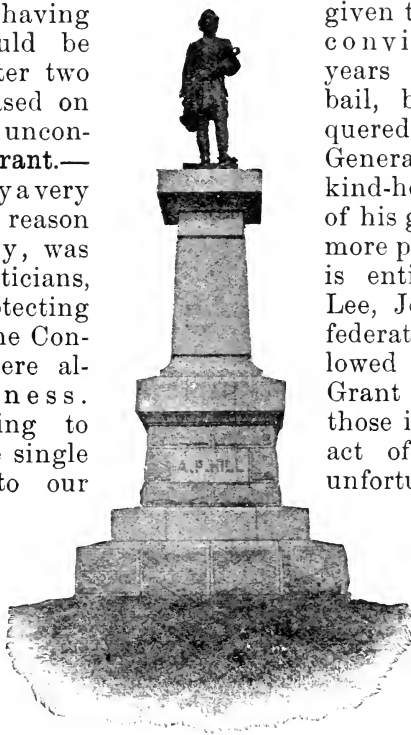
had rations issued from his own supplies, and he also permitted them to keep their horses, that they might be able to begin again to work their farms. Where truth compels so many cruelties to be narrated, it is pleasant to be able to record this example of magnanimity and humanity.

**The Other Side.**—But cruel as war is, it sometimes

and other eminent given their opinion convicted of no years of suffering bail, broken in quered in spirit.

General Grant, who kind-hearted man, of his great bravery more powerful than is entitled to the Lee, Johnston and federate leaders, lowed to go about Grant ever showed those in his power, act of cruelty or unfortunate people

charged him. He ery consid- Lee's feel- he received der of his pomattox; wants of red Confed- whom he



A. P. HILL MONUMENT, NEAR RICHMOND, VA.

shows how noble and unselfish men can be. Colonel John Haskell, of South Carolina, was so severely wounded in his arm that amputation was necessary, and the surgeons prepared to administer chloroform to him. "Stop, doctor; since Lincoln has made medicines 'contraband of war,' you have very little chloroform?" "Yes, colonel; that is so." "Then, doctor, I will stand the operation without it; keep the chloroform for some soldier whose need is greater than mine." Another noble example of generosity and unselfishness was General M. C. Butler, also of South Carolina. During the great cavalry fight at Brandy Station he and Captain Farley, whom he had seen that morning for the first time, were side by side when a cannon-ball came bounding at them, which cut off Butler's leg, and, passing through his horse, cut off Farley's leg. As they lay upon the ground, Butler, with his handkerchief, tried to staunch the bleeding, and called to Farley to do the same. The surgeon and other officers came running to Butler's help, when he, observing Farley's struggling horse was about to crush him, cried: "No, gentlemen; go to Farley. He needs you more than I do." Thus you see, my young friends, how in war the "bravest are the tenderest."

#### QUESTIONS.

1. How was the war conducted on the part of the Northern government?
2. What articles were forbidden to be introduced into the South?
3. Had this ever been done before?
4. What is said of the devastation of the Valley?
5. Of Sherman's march to the sea?
6. Who was General Hunter, and what was his method of making war?
7. Who drove him out of Virginia?
8. Tell of Dahlgren's raid.
9. What written orders were found on his person when he was killed?
10. With what has the South been charged in reference to prisoners?
11. Why is she not blamable?
12. Where does the responsibility rest for the suffering of prisoners, both Federal and Confederate?
13. Why?
14. What is said of the treatment of President Davis?
15. Why was he released?
16. Who protected the Confederate generals after the surrender?
17. What is said of his character?
18. Relate the incident of Colonel Haskell.
19. Tell about General Butler and Captain Farley.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

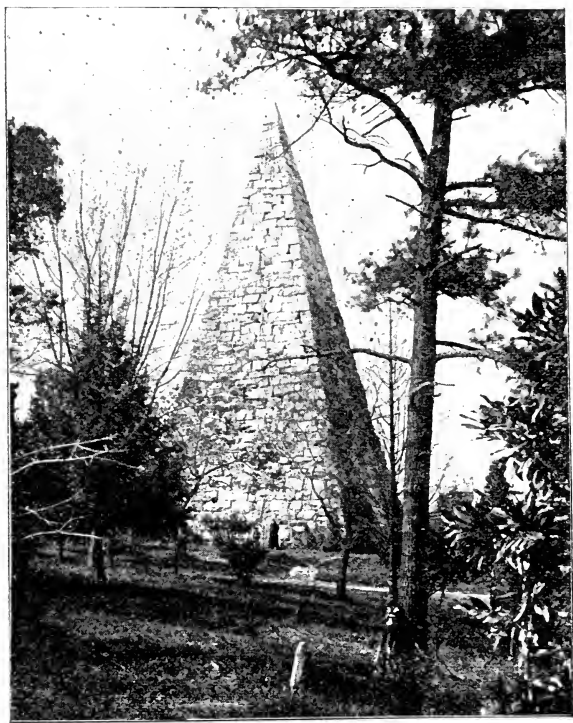
CONDITION OF VIRGINIA—ENFRANCHISEMENT OF THE NEGROES—DIVISION OF THE STATE—VIRGINIA'S PROGRESS—CONFEDERATE MONUMENTS.

**Condition of Virginia at the Close of the War.**—The condition of Virginia at the close of the war was desperate. Many of our able-bodied men were dead or crippled, or starving and dying in Northern prisons, or lying in unmarked graves about them, dead in their youth of their most cruel imprisonment. In every county of the State, officers of the United States with soldiers were stationed as a police force over our people. The negroes, just emancipated, rioted in their new found importance, and in many instances delighted to insult and injure their former owners. Sometimes the provost-marshal was a gentleman, and did what he could to protect the whites from this cruelty, but oftentimes his sympathy was with the negroes. The whole State was under bayonet rule. No Confederate was allowed to engage in business of any sort, until he had taken the oath of allegiance to the government which had conquered us with so much cruelty.

**Enfranchisement of the Negroes.**—While the white people of Virginia, who had acted so bravely, were thus humiliated and deprived of all voice in the conduct of the affairs of Virginia, the negroes were soon allowed to vote and hold office. With them were joined white adventurers from the North, known as "carpet-baggers," who came down to share in what spoils were left by the war. These were called carpet-baggers because they had no interest and no property in the State except such as they brought in their travelling satchels, and were supposed to come to secure what plunder they could and then return to the North with it. To these were joined a more unfortunate class still, who, born and reared amongst us, and in a few shameful instances of the better class of native Virginians, sought to win pardon and favor from our con-

querors by joining in this degrading oppression of their own people.

**Division of the State.**—West Virginia had been cut off from Virginia during the war and made into a separate State in violation of the Constitution. This reduced the whole population of Old Virginia to 1,225,163. Of these



CONFEDERATE SOLDIERS' MONUMENT, HOLLYWOOD.

712,089 were whites and 513,074 negroes. In the cities of Richmond, Lynchburg, Petersburg and Norfolk the negroes equalled or probably exceeded the whites in numbers.

**Energy of the Natives.**—All of us had to work for our living. The negroes had all of their lives been accustomed

to this, and they were favored by our conquerors. Many of the white people were unaccustomed to labor, or any menial service, and now for the first time had to go to hard work, each man doing what his hands found to do, and in a few years Virginia and her people resumed their place in the Union.

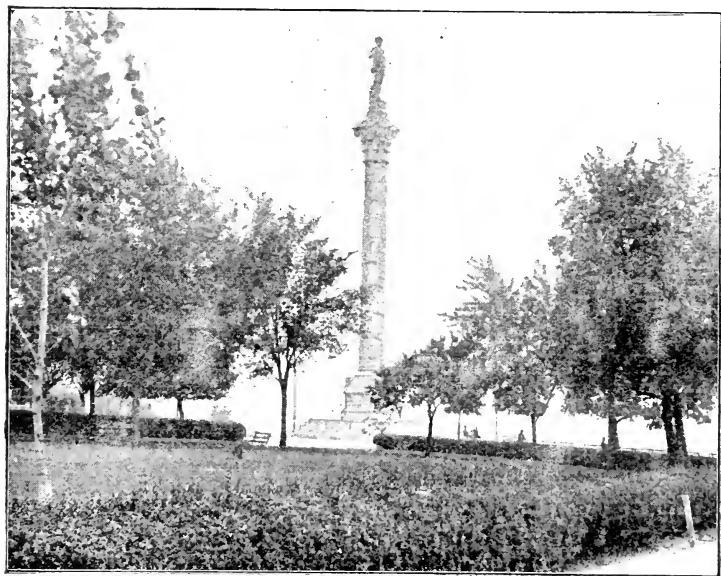
**Self-Control of the People.**—By a wonderful self-control and wisdom she has accomplished this. She quietly endured for years the rule of the bayonet, and the insolence of office of Governor Pierpoint and the military governors appointed to rule over her, of the freedman's agents and of carpet-baggers and negroes who thrust themselves into every office, until she was permitted to elect a governor and General Assembly. Then she chose for governor Gilbert C. Walker, who had come down from New York as an officer of the Federal army, and by his good judgment made friends of the Virginians and was able to protect Virginia and advance her public interests as no native-born Virginian could then have done. When Governor Walker's term of office as governor expired, General Kemper one of the noblest of Virginia's sons, was elected governor. Governor Holliday succeeded Governor Kemper, Governor Cameron succeeded Governor Holliday, General Fitz Lee succeeded Cameron, Governor McKinney succeeded Governor Lee, Governor O'Ferrall has succeeded Governor McKinney.

**Virginia's Progress.**—Under their administrations, Virginia has steadily advanced in prosperity and power. The great public debt of the State has been adjusted. Her mines and her factories, her commerce, her institutions of learning, her great system of public schools, in which all classes of her people are freely educated, have grown and prospered.

**The Capitol Disaster.**—Under Governor Walker's administration a disaster occurred only paralleled by the burning of the theatre in 1811. April 27, 1870, an immense crowd had assembled in the chamber of the Court of Appeals, on the third floor of the Capitol, to hear the

decision of the court in an election case involving the title to the mayoralty of the city of Richmond. Just as the judges were about to enter the court-room the floor gave way, precipitating the dense crowd to the floor below. Sixty-five persons, some of them prominent in public and private life, were killed, and more than two hundred injured, were rescued from the ruins.

**Our Monuments.**—Beautiful monuments to our great dead have been erected in our public places. The British



SOLDIERS' AND SAILORS' MONUMENT, LIBBY HILL PARK.

admirers of Stonewall Jackson have erected a monument to him in our Capitol Square, and caused two large gold medals to be annually presented to the first and second graduates of the Virginia Military Institute, of which school Jackson was a professor. The beautiful recumbent statue of Lee, which Valentine executed, is over his grave in the chapel at Washington and Lee University. This

fine work is surpassed only by the statue of Jefferson by the same artist. The statues of General A. P. Hill, of the Young Howitzer, and of the Soldiers' and Sailors' monument, all by Sheppard, attest the skill and genius of our native artists. The equestrian statue of Lee, which has been erected at the end of Franklin street, Richmond, executed by the French sculptor Mercié, does not convey a pleasing impression of our great chief to many of those who followed him so long and who will ever carry in their memories and hearts his grand image. In many of the counties of the State beautiful monuments have been erected at the county-seats, on which are inscribed the names of their sons who fell during the war. These are, for the most part, tributes from the noble women of Virginia to those who died in their defence.

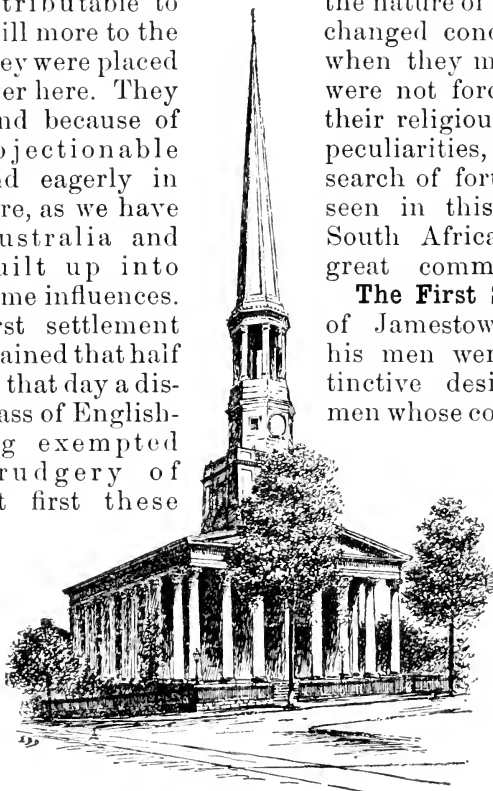
## QUESTIONS.

1. Tell of the condition of Virginia at the close of the war.
2. How was the State governed?
3. What class was soon allowed to vote and hold office?
4. What were those who joined them from the North called?
5. How had the territory of Virginia been reduced?
6. What is said of the energy of her people?
7. Of their self-control?
8. Who was the first governor elected by the people?
9. Who have succeeded him in that office?
10. Tell of Virginia's progress since the war.
11. What monuments have been erected?

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

THE VIRGINIANS—THE FIRST SETTLERS—CLASS DISTINCTIONS — WHAT VIRGINIANS HAVE ACCOMPLISHED.

**The Development of the Virginians.**—The extraordinary conduct and character of the Virginians are partly attributable to the nature of our first settlers. Still more to the changed conditions in which they were placed when they made their homes over here. They were not forced out of England because of their religious belief or other objectionable peculiarities, but came freely in search of fortune and adventure, as we have seen in this day California, Australia and South Africa colonized and built up into great communities by the same influences. The first settlement plained that half in that day a dis- class of English- ing exempted from drudgery of manual labor. At first these



ST. PAUL'S CHURCH, RICHMOND.\*

**The First Settlers.**—In the of Jamestown, Smith com- his men were "gentlemen," tinctive designation of the men whose condition and rear- them from the manual labor. gentlemen did not know how to work, but they were soon com- pelled to do their share of what was necessary, and they became the best work- men, as they were the most intelligent. As,

in course of a few years, the colony grew and prospered,

\* Where President Davis and General Lee worshipped during the war, and where Mr. Davis was notified of the retreat of Lee's army.

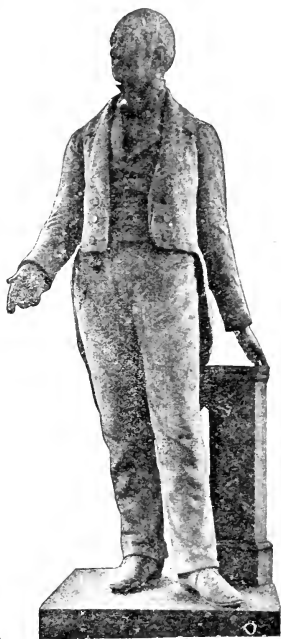


more of this class were invited to make their homes in Virginia.

**Royalists.**—Many of the royalists who came over after the execution of King Charles I., as you have seen, were of the gentry, and there came with them their retainers and servants, who had been their hereditary tenants—who had been their comrades and followers in the fierce war for the rights of the king—and naturally followed their fortunes to Virginia. Negro slavery in time created a distinctly menial class for the wealthy planters, and the less prosperous whites became managers on the plantations or small farmers and tenants, laboring with their own hands, it is true, but in fact and feeling independent, and on friendly terms with their wealthy neighbors, whose equals they were in birth, and companions in their sports and comrades in the frequent wars with the Indians.

**Class Distinctions Abolished.**—

The war of the Revolution did much to remove all class distinctions in Virginia. Jefferson's Declaration of Independence, his bill abolishing the old English laws of entail and primogeniture, and his bill for religious freedom, all combined to sweep away class distinctions and make Virginia one great and friendly community of proud and independent white men. If any trace of unfriendliness between the rich and poor remained amongst us, our last great war forever swept it away. For four long years the rich man's son and the poor man's son stood shoulder to shoulder, enduring the



STATUE OF HENRY CLAY.\*

\*Presented by the Ladies' Clay Monument Association, April 12, 1860.

same privations, encountering together the same dangers, sleeping together, eating together, and fighting together for the same principles. They together present to the world to-day a harmonious and self-respecting community such as can be found in no other country.

**What Virginians Have Accomplished.**—I hope I have made you see, my young Virginia friends, how a few



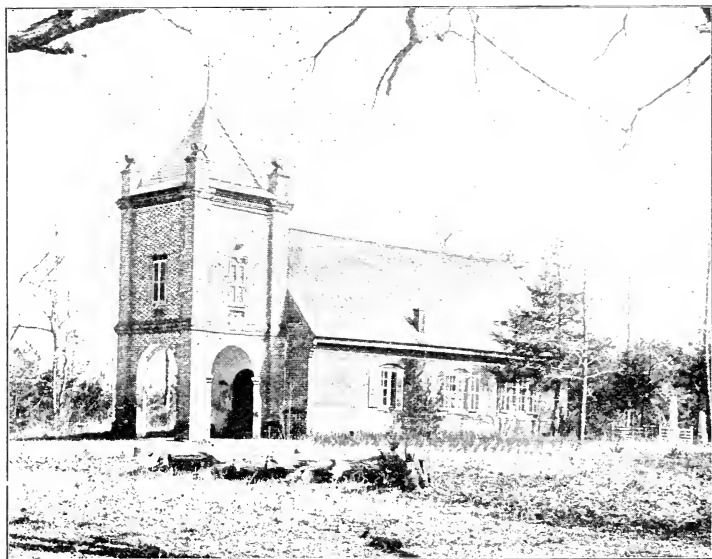
WILLIAMS' FERRY, PAMUNKEY RIVER.

dozen of Englishmen, moved by the love of empire and the daring adventure of their race, settled upon an unhealthy island of Virginia, and have, by an unparalleled energy and wisdom, extended their power over this continent. Their descendants have in 200 years added to the territory of the United States all of that region which stretches from the Atlantic to the Pacific, from the Potomac to the Rio Grande.

General George Rogers Clarke, of Albemarle, Va., con-

quered from England the Northwest territory, which now contains the States of Illinois, Indiana, Ohio, Wisconsin, and part of Michigan. Virginia prohibited the introduction of slavery into any part of it, and at the close of the Revolution gave it for the common property of the United States.

Captains Lewis and Clarke, of the same county in Virginia, explored the vast region between the Mississippi and Pacific Ocean.



ST. PETER'S CHURCH, NEW KENT COUNTY, VA.

President Jefferson, in 1803, purchased from Napoleon the French province of Louisiana, divided now into many States.

President Monroe, of Westmoreland county, in 1821, bought Florida, now divided between Florida, Georgia, Alabama and Mississippi. In 1836 General Sam Houston, of Rockbridge county, Va., conquered Texas from Mexico, and in 1844 application was made for admission into the United States, and it was admitted in December, 1845.

In 1846 Generals Taylor and Scott, of Virginia, overcame Mexico in many battles, and New Mexico, Arizona, and California were added to our territory by treaty at the close of the war.

Dr. Thomas Walker, of Albemarle county, in 1750, first explored and named the Cumberland River and mountains, after the Duke of Cumberland. He and five companions were absent on this expedition six months. They killed many buffalo, elk, deer, and bear, and went across the Cumberland to the headwaters of the Kentucky River, which gave its name to that State.

Daniel Boone, a boy from the Yadkin River, North Carolina, in 1769, was the first to lead the way into Kentucky and lay the foundations of that State. John Sevier, a Huguenot from the Shenandoah Valley, went to the Watauga settlement (then supposed to be in Virginia), and became the founder and first governor of the State of Tennessee. James Robertson, born in Brunswick county, Va., established the first permanent settlements on the Cumberland River.

Virginia gave seven presidents to the United States, and Generals Joe Johnston, R. E. Lee, and Stonewall Jackson to the Southern Confederacy.

Matthew Fontaine Maury, who marked out the tracks of speed and safety for mariners of every clime over the ocean's bosom, and showed the beds on the bottom of the seas where the telegraph now safely lies, of whom the officers of all maritime nations came to learn, on whom kings and emperors bestowed orders, medals, and decorations, and of whom the great Humboldt said "he created a new science," was a Virginia boy, born in the county of Spotsylvania.



MATTHEW F. MAURY.

Well might the great Georgian, Senator Hill, declare, "No country in the world has ever produced so many men so great as Virginia has."

And Lord Chatham, the greatest of England's prime ministers, declared, in considering the work of that first American congress, of which George Washington, Edmund Pendleton, Richard Henry Lee, and Patrick Henry were the guiding spirits, "it is doubtful if in the history of mankind any body of men equal to these has ever existed."

Let the mothers of Virginia impress these great truths upon their children's minds, that they may ever through life remember "the breed of noble bloods" from whom their race has sprung, and strive to be worthy of them. For it was their mothers who most influenced the lives and character of the great men of our State, who trained them in the path of duty, who taught them to love God, speak the truth, and ever to fight for principle and right.

Let them forget, if they can, that this great country thus created and guided by Virginia ever turned upon her the cruelties of internecine strife and rent her in twain. And when next the men of Virginia and the men of the North stand in line of battle, it will be shoulder to shoulder against some common foe.

#### QUESTIONS.

1. To what are the conduct and character of the Virginians to be attributed?
2. What was the character of the first settlers?
3. Who were the Royalists?
4. How many are said to have come to Virginia during the period of Cromwell's rule in England?
5. What acts did much to destroy class distinction in Virginia?
6. Who was their author?
7. What still further tended to that end?
8. What is said of the Virginians of to-day?
9. How did the United States acquire the Northwest territory?
10. Who first explored the territory between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific?
11. How did the United States acquire Louisiana?
12. Florida?
13. Who conquered Texas?
14. What generals commanded in the Mexican war?
15. What territory was acquired?
16. Who first explored the Cumberland River and Mountains?
17. Who laid the foundations of the State of Kentucky?
18. What can you tell of John Sevier?
19. Of James Robertson?

20. How many presidents has Virginia given to the country?
21. What prominent generals did she give to the Confederacy?
22. What can you tell of Matthew F. Maury?
23. What did Senator Hill, of Georgia, declare?
24. What did Lord Chatham say of the first American Congress?
25. What should be the aim of the Virginians of to-day?



STATUE OF JEFFERSON.

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

## CHAPTER XXV.—Battle of Bethel—First Battle of Manassas.

Advance of McClellan—Battle of Seven Pines.

Jackson's Valley Campaign.

Battles Around Richmond—Second Manassas.

Capture of Harper's Ferry.

Battles of Boonsboro' and Sharpsburg.

Visit of British Officers.

General Lee's Address.

McClellan Removed.

Battle of Fredericksburg.

Battle of Chancellorsville.

Jackson's Flank Movement.

Death of Jackson.

Advance into Pennsylvania—Gettysburg.

War Again Transferred to Virginia.

Grant's Wilderness Campaign.

Siege of Petersburg.

The Cadets at New Market.

Fall of Richmond.

Surrender at Appomattox.

The Confederate Iron-clad *Virginia*.Battle with the *Monitor*.

Battle of Brandy Station.

Capacity of the People for Self-Government.

The Private Soldier—The Virginia Military Institute.

The Army of Northern Virginia.

## CHAPTER XXVI.—Harsh Measures.

Medicines Contraband.

Sherman's Brutalities.

The Valley Devastated.

Hunter's Burnings.

Dahlgren's Raid.

The Sufferings of Prisoners.

The Treatment of President Davis.

General Grant.

## CHAPTER XXVII.—Condition of Virginia at the Close of the War.

Enfranchisement of the Negroes.

Division of the State.

Energy of the Natives.

Self-Control of the People.

Virginia's Progress.

Our Monuments.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.—The Development of the Virginians.

The First Settlers.

Royalists.

Class Distinctions Abolished.

What Virginians have accomplished.

## LIST

Of those who have filled the Executive Office in  
Virginia from 1606 to 1896.

1606.—Sir Thomas Smyth, or Smith, first President of the Council of the London Company and its Treasurer.

1607, April 26.—Captain Edward Maria Wingfield, President of the Council in Virginia.

1607, September 10.—Captain John Ratcliffe, President of the Council in Virginia.

1608, September 7.—Captain John Smith, President of the Council in Virginia.

(1609, May 23.—Sir Thomas West, Earl De La Warr, or Delaware, appointed "Governor and Captain-General"; did not reach the Colony until June 10, 1610, the resident Executives in the *interim* being as follows:)

1609, August —.—Captain George Percy, President of the Council in Virginia.

1610, May 23.—Sir Thomas Gates, Lieutenant-General and Deputy Governor.

1610, June 10.—Earl De La Warr, Governor and Captain-General.

1611, March 28.—Captain George Percy, President of the Council.

1611, May 19.—Sir Thomas Dale, "High Marshal" and Acting Governor.

1611, August —.—Sir Thomas Gates, Acting Governor.

1613, March —.—Sir Thomas Dale, Acting Governor.

1616, April —.—Captain George Yeardley, Deputy or Lieutenant-Governor.

1617, May 15.—Captain Samuel Argall, Deputy or Lieutenant-Governor.

1619, April 9.—Captain Nathaniel Powell, President of the Council in Virginia.

1619, April 19.—Sir George Yeardley, who had been knighted and appointed Governor and Captain-General, November 18, 1618, arrived in the Colony.

1621, November 8.—Sir Francis Wyatt, Governor and Captain-General.

1626, May 17.—Sir George Yeardley (commissioned March 4th), Governor and Captain-General. Died November, 1627.

1627, November 14.—Captain Francis West, President of the Council.

(1628, March 26.—Sir John Harvey, appointed Governor and Captain-General, but did not arrive until later. In the *interim*, as follows:)

1629, March 5.—Dr. John Pott, President of the Council.

1630, March —.—Sir John Harvey, Governor and Captain-General, "thrust out of his government" by the people, but recommissioned by King Charles I., January 11, 1635. Until his arrival, April 2, 1636, the Executive was:

1635, April 28.—Captain John West, President of the Council.



1636, April 2.—Sir John Harvey, Governor and Captain-General.

1639, November —.—Sir Francis Wyatt, Governor and Captain-General.

1642, February —.—Sir William Berkeley, who had been commissioned August 9, 1641, arrived as Governor and Captain-General.

1644, June —.—Richard Kempe, President of the Council, Acting Governor during the absence of Sir William Berkeley in England.

1645, June —.—Sir William Berkeley, Governor.

1652, April 30.—Richard Bennet, Acting Governor under the Commonwealth of Cromwell.

1655, March —.—Edward Digges, President of the Council under the Commonwealth of Cromwell.

1658, March 13.—Captain Samuel Matthews, President of the Council under the Commonwealth of Cromwell until January, 1660, from which time the Colony was without a Governor until the election by the Assembly.

1660, March 23.—Of Sir William Berkeley, as Governor. He was commissioned as such by Charles II., July 31, 1660.

1661, April 30.—Colonel Francis Morryson, Deputy or Lieutenant-Governor.

1662, fall of.—Sir William Berkeley, Governor.

(1675, July 8.—Thomas Lord Culpeper appointed Governor and Captain-General for life; died in 1719. Until his arrival:)

1677, April 27.—Herbert Jeffreys appointed Governor October 9, 1676, (with Captain Robert Walter as his Deputy, who died October 10, 1676); commissioned Lieutenant-Governor November 11, 1676; died December, 1678.

1678, December 30.—Sir Henry Chicheley, Deputy Governor.

1680, May 10.—Thomas Lord Culpeper, Governor and Captain-General.

1683, September 17.—Nicholas Spencer, President of the Council.

1684, April 16.—Francis Lord Howard, Baron Effingham, Lieutenant-Governor; commissioned September 28, 1683.

1688, October 20.—Nathaniel Bacon, President of the Council.

1690.—Sir Lionel Copley, Governor.

1690, October 16.—Colonel Francis Nicholson, Lieutenant-Governor.

1693, October 16.—Sir Edmund Andros, who had been commissioned Governor, March 1, 1693.

1698, December 9.—Colonel Francis Nicholson, Lieutenant-Governor; commissioned July 20, 1698.

1704.—George Hamilton Douglas, Earl of Orkney; commissioned Governor-in-Chief; never came to Virginia; died July 29, 1737.

1705, August 15.—Edward Nott, Lieutenant-Governor; died August, 1706.

1706, August —.—Edmund Jennings, President of the Council

(1707, April 4.—Colonel Robert Hunter, commissioned as Lieutenant-Governor, but being captured by the French on his voyage for Virginia, and conveyed to France, never acted.)

1710, June 23.—Colonel Alexander Spotswood, Lieutenant-Governor.

1722, September 27.—Hugh Drysdale; died July 22, 1726.

1726, July 22.—Robert Carter, President of the Council.

1727, October 23.—William Gooch (subsequently knighted), Lieutenant-Governor.

(1737.—William Anne Keppel, second Earl of Albemarle; appointed Governor-in-Chief, September 6, 1737; died December 23, 1754.)

1740.—Between September 16th and December 5th, as indicated by land patents, signed respectively by Sir William Gooch and James Blair, D. D., the latter as President of the Council, was Acting Governor during the absence of Sir William Gooch in command of the expedition against Carthage. The last patent signed by James Blair was on July 25, 1741.

1741, July —.—Sir William Gooch, Lieutenant-Governor.

1749, June 20.—John Robinson, President of the Council.

1749, September 5.—Thomas Lee, President of the Council; died 1751.

1751, February 12.—Lewis Burwell, President of the Council.

1751, November 20.—Robert Dinwiddie, Lieutenant-Governor.

(1756, July —.—John Campbell, Earl of Loudoun, appointed Governor-in-Chief, and though he came to New York, was never in Virginia.)

1758, January —.—John Blair, President of the Council.

1758, June 7.—Francis Fauquier, Lieutenant-Governor; appointed February 10, 1758.

(1763.—Sir Jeffrey Amherst appointed Governor-in-Chief.)

1767, September 11.—John Blair, President of the Council.

1768, October 28.—Norborne Berkeley, Baron de Botetourt, Governor-in-Chief; died October 15, 1770.

1770, October 15.—William Nelson, President of the Council.

1771, August —.—John Murray, Earl Dunmore, Governor-in-Chief; appointed July, 1771; fled June, 1775, from the seat of government.

## GOVERNORS UNDER THE STATE CONSTITUTION, ETC.

1776, June 29.—Patrick Henry.

1779, June 1.—Thomas Jefferson.

1781, June 12.—Thomas Nelson, Jr., resigned.

1781, November 20.—Benjamin Harrison.

1784, November 29.—Patrick Henry.

1786, December 1.—Edmund Randolph.

1788, December 1.—Beverly Randolph.

1791, December 1.—Henry Lee.

1794, December 1.—Robert Brooks.

1796, December 1.—James Wood.

1799, December 1.—James Monroe.

1802, December 1.—John Page.

1805, December 1.—William H. Cabell.

1808, December 1.—John Tyler.

1811, January 11.—James Monroe; appointed Secretary of State of the United States, November 25, 1811.

1811, November 25.—George William Smith, Lieutenant-Governor, and Acting Governor; died December 26, 1811.

1811, December 26.—Peyton Randolph, Senior Member of Council of State.

- 1812, January 3.—James Barbour, Governor.  
1814, December 1.—Wilson Cary Nicholas.  
1816, December 1.—James P. Preston.  
1819, December 1.—Thomas Mann Randolph.  
1822, December 1.—James Pleasants, Jr.  
1825, December 1.—John Tyler.  
1827, March —.—William B. Giles.  
1830, March —.—John Floyd.  
1834, March —.—Littleton Waller Tazewell; resigned April 30, 1836.  
1836, April 30.—Wyndham Robertson, Lieutenant-Governor.  
1837, March —.—David Campbell.  
1840, March —.—Thomas Walker Gilmer; resigned to take his seat as  
a Member of Congress.  
1841, March —.—John Rutherford, Lieutenant-Governor.  
1842, March —.—John M. Gregory, Lieutenant-Governor.  
1843, January —.—James McDowell, Governor.  
1846, January —.—William Smith.  
1849, January —.—John B. Floyd.  
1851, January 1.—Joseph Johnson.  
1856, January —.—Henry Alexander Wise.  
1860, January —.—John Letcher.  
1864, January —.—William Smith.  
1865, May 9.—Francis H. Pierpoint.  
1868, April 16.—Henry H. Wells.  
1870, January 20.—Gilbert C. Walker.  
1874, January 1.—James L. Kemper.  
1878, January 1.—Frederick W. M. Holliday.  
1882, January 1.—William E. Cameron.  
1886, January 1.—Fitzhugh Lee.  
1890, January 1.—Philip W. McKinney.  
1894, January 1.—Charles T. O'Ferrall.

## VIRGINIA BILL OF RIGHTS.

When, on the 15th of May 1776, the Convention of Virginia instructed their delegates in Congress to propose to that body to declare the United Colonies free and independent States, it, at the same time, appointed a committee to prepare a declaration of rights and such a plan of government as would be most likely to maintain peace and order in the Colony and secure substantial and equal liberty to the people. On subsequent days the committee was enlarged; Mr. George Mason was added to it on the 18th. The declaration of rights was on the 27th reported by Mr. Archibald Cary, the chairman of the committee, and after being twice read, was ordered to be printed for the perusal of members. It was considered in committee of the whole on the 29th of May, and the 3d, 4th, 5th and 10th of June. It was then reported to the house with amendments. On the 11th the convention considered the amendments, and having agreed thereto, ordered that the declaration (with the amendments) be fairly transcribed and read a third time. This having been done on the 12th, the declaration was then read a third time and passed *nem. con.* A manuscript copy of the first draft of the declaration, just as it was drawn by Mr. Mason,\* is in the library of Virginia. The declaration as it passed was adopted without alteration by the Convention of 1829-30, and re-adopted with amendments by the Convention of 1850-51, and as amended is as follows: †

*A Declaration of Rights made by the Representatives of the good people of VIRGINIA, assembled in full and free Convention, which rights do pertain to them and their posterity as the basis and foundation of government.*

1. That all men are by nature equally free and independent, and have certain inherent rights, of which, when they enter into a state of society, they cannot, by any compact, deprive or divest their posterity; namely, the enjoyment of life and liberty, with the means of acquiring and possessing property, and pursuing and obtaining happiness and safety.

2. That all power is vested in, and consequently derived from, the people; that Magistrates are their trustees and servants, and at all times amenable to them.

3 That government is, or ought to be, instituted for the common benefit, protection and security of the people, nation, or community: of all the various modes and forms of government, that is best, which is capable of producing the greatest degree of happiness and safety, and is most effectually secured against the danger of mal-administration; and that, when any government shall be found inadequate or contrary to these purposes, a majority of the community hath an indubitable, unalienable, and indefeasible right, to reform, alter, or abolish it, in such manner as shall be judged most conducive to the public weal.

4. That no man, or set of men, are entitled to exclusive or separate emoluments or privileges from the community, but in consideration of public services; which not being descendible, neither ought the offices of Magistrate, Legislator, or Judge, to be hereditary.

‡ 5 That the legislative, executive and judicial powers should be separate and distinct; and that the members thereof may be restrained from

\* Va. Hist. Reg. Jan. 1849, p. 29.

† See Acts 1852, p. 320-21. Sections amended are 5, 6, 8 and 11. The Bill of Rights as originally passed, is found in the Revised Code of 1819, p. 31-2, and Code of 1849, p. 32, 33, 34, 1st edition.

‡ Amended. Acts 1852, p. 321, § 5. The 5th section, without amendment, read: "That the legislative and executive powers of the state should be separate and distinct from the judiciary and that the members of the two first," &c,

oppression, by feeling and participating the burthens of the people, they should, at fixed periods, be reduced to a private station, return into that body from which they were originally taken, and the vacancies be supplied by frequent, certain, and regular elections, in which all, or any part of the former members, to be again eligible, or ineligible, as the laws shall direct.

\*6. That all elections ought to be free; and that all men having sufficient evidence of permanent common interest with, and attachment to, the community have the right of suffrage, and cannot be taxed or deprived of their property for public uses, without their own consent, or that of their representatives so elected, nor bound by any law to which they have not, in like manner, assented, for the public good

7. That all power of suspending laws, or the execution of laws, by any authority, without consent of the representatives of the people, is injurious to their rights, and ought not to be exercised.

†8. That, in all capital or criminal prosecutions, a man hath a right to demand the cause and nature of his accusation, to be confronted with the accusers and witnesses, to call for evidence in his favor, and to a speedy trial by an impartial jury of twelve men of his vicinage, without whose unanimous consent he cannot be found guilty; nor can he be compelled to give evidence against himself; that no man be deprived of his liberty, except by the law of the land or the judgment of his peers.

9. That excessive bail ought not to be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

10. That general warrants, whereby an officer or messenger may be commanded to search suspected places without evidence of a fact committed, or to seize any person or persons not named, or whose offence is not particularly described and supported by evidence, are grievous and oppressive, and ought not to be granted.

‡11. That, in controversies respecting property, and in suits between man and man, the ancient trial by jury of twelve men is preferable to any other, and ought to be held sacred.

12. That the freedom of the press is one of the great bulwarks of liberty, and can never be restrained but by despotic governments.

13. That a well regulated militia, composed of the body of the people, trained to arms, is the proper, natural and safe defence of a free state; that standing armies, in times of peace, should be avoided, as dangerous to liberty; and that in all cases, the military should be under strict subordination to, and governed by, the civil power

14. That the people have a right to uniform government; and therefore that no government separate from, or independent of, the government of Virginia, ought to be erected or established within the limits thereof

15. That no free government, or the blessings of liberty, can be preserved to any people, but by a firm adherence to justice, moderation, temperance, frugality, and virtue, and by a frequent recurrence to fundamental principles.

16. That religion, or the duty which we owe to our Creator, and the manner of discharging it, can be directed only by reason and conviction, not by force or violence; and therefore all men are equally entitled to the free exercise of religion, according to the dictates of conscience; and that it is the mutual duty of all to practice Christian forbearance, love, and charity towards each other.

\*Amended. Acts 1852, p. 321, § 6. The 6th section was: "That election of members to serve as representatives of the people in assembly," &c.

†Amended. Acts 1852, p. 321, § 8, 11. In the 8th and 11th sections, the words "of twelve men" inserted after the word "jury."

‡See note † on preceding page.

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

The Unanimous Declaration of the Thirteen United States of America.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident; that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed. That, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing the judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our Constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us ;

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States ;

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world ;

For imposing taxes on us without our consent ;

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury ;

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences ;

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies ;

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments ;

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy, scarcely paralleled in most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war; in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, *Free and Independent States*; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as *Free and Independent States*, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which *Independent States* may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of DIVINE PROVIDENCE, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.—Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND, ETC.—Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.—Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK.—William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.—Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.—Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.

DELAWARE.—Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND.—Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.—William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.—Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.



## CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

---

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I. SECTION 1.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States; which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2.—1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

2. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3.—1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the Execu-

tive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4.—1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulation, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5.—1. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members in such manner and under such penalties as each House may provide.

2. Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3. Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6.—1. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have

been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7.—1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it with his objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States, and before the same shall take effect shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be re-passed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION. 8.—The Congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcy throughout the United States;

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads;

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13. To provide and maintain a navy;

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrection, and repel invasions;

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings; and,

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9.—1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION 10.—1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the

revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II. SECTION 1.—1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of Electors equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

*Clause 3 has been superseded by the 12th Article of Amendments.*

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the Electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President, neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed or a President shall be elected.

7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall be neither increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION 2.—1. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint Embassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of law, or in the heads of Departments.

3. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3.—He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper, he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4.—The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, or conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.—SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the Supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2.—1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State, or citizen thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3.—1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.—SECTION 1.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2.—1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens of the several States.

2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3.—1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular State.

SECTION 4.—The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the Executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.—The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.—1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.—The ratification of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

## AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII.—In suits at common law where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.—The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in



their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a number of members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.—1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.—1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector

of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.—1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition or servitude.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS.

**A.**

"A Fair Mark—Shoot!" 79.  
 American Discovery, Pioneers of  
 (map), 10.  
 A Message from Lord Delaware, 51.  
 An Eastern Virginia Kitchen, 153.  
 An Old-Time Negro Cabin, 164.  
 Antique Furniture, 105.  
 Antique Sofa, 157.  
 Appomattox, Lee Leaving, 193.

**B.**

Battle of Manassas, 181.  
 Beauregard, P. G. T., 182.  
 Big Bethel, Battle of, 180.  
 Breckinridge, J. C., 192.  
 Burnside, General A. E., 187.  
 Byrd, Colonel William, 91.

**C.**

Cabot, John, 10.  
 Chapel near Berryville, Interior of,  
 151.  
 Clarke, George Rogers, 139.  
 Clarke's March to Vincennes, 140.  
 Clay, Henry, Statue of, 211.  
 Colonial Grants, 1606-1732 (map),  
 66.  
 Columbus Landing on the Baha-  
 mas, 9.  
 Confederate Soldiers' Monument,  
 Hollywood, 206.  
 Confederate Soldiers' and Sailors'  
 Monument, Libby Hill Park,  
 208.  
 Confederate White House, 177.  
*Cumberland*, The Sinking of the,  
 194.

**D.**

Davis, Jefferson, 172.  
 Drake, Sir Francis, 10.

**E.**

Eastern Virginia Kitchen, 153.  
 Early, J. A., 200.  
 Exterior of Spring-House in the  
 Valley of Virginia, 152,

**F.**

*Fac-Simile* of Virginia Treasury  
 Note, 1776, 148.  
 Freedman's Cabin, 166.  
 Furniture, Antique Bedstead, Chair,  
 Stand, Table, 105.  
 Sofa, 157.

**G.**

Grant, General U. S., 190.  
 Greenway Court, 109.  
 Going to Town, 165.

**H.**

Hanover Court-House, 119.  
 Harper's Ferry, 185.  
 Henry, Patrick, 118.  
 Hill, General A. P., 186.  
 Monument to, 203.  
 Hooker, General Joseph, 188.  
 Houdon's Statue of Washington  
 (frontispiece).

**I.**

Indians--Map of Distribution of  
 Tribes, 26.  
 Indians, Attacked by, 35.  
 Indian Mound, 25.  
 Quiver, &c., 28.  
 Relics, 29.  
 Village, 27.  
 Weapons, 25.  
 Interior of Old Chapel near Berry-  
 ville, 151.  
 Interior of Spring-House in Valley  
 of Virginia, 152.

**J.**

- Jackson, General T. J. (Insert).  
 Statue of, 189.  
 Jefferson, Thomas, 133.  
     Home of, 144.  
     Tomb of, 158.  
     Statue of, 216.  
 Johnston, General Joseph E., 182.

**K.**

- Kitchen in Eastern Virginia, 153.

**L.**

- Lafayette, Marquis de, 142.  
 Lee, Richard Henry, 137.  
 Lee, General R. E. (Insert).  
     Leaving Appomattox, 193.  
     Equestrian Statue, 202.  
 Lewis, Meriwether, 159.  
 Lincoln, Abraham, 174.  
 Living-Room in Colonial Home in  
     the Middle of Eighteenth Cen-  
     tury, 106.

**M.**

- Madison, James, 155.  
     Home of, 156.  
 Malvern Hill, Old House at, 103.  
 Manassas, Battle of, 181.  
 Marshall, John, 160.  
     Silhouette of, 160.  
 Maryland, Settlement of, 66.  
 Mason, George, 126.  
 Maury, Matthew F., 214.  
 McClellan, General George B., 184.  
 Meade, General George G., 190.  
 Message from Lord Delaware, 51.  
 Military Hat of Revolutionary Pe-  
     riod, 145.  
 Monroe, James, 162.  
     Tomb of, 170.  
 Monticello, 144.  
 Montpelier, 156.  
 Morgan, General Daniel, 138.  
 Mount Vernon, 116.  
     Washington's Room at, 117.  
     Weaving and Spinning-Room  
     at, 149.

**N.**

- Negro Wood-Chopper and Shanty,  
 168.  
 Nelson House, Yorktown, 146.  
 New France and English Colonies  
     at the time of French and In-  
     dian War (map), 116.

**O.**

- Old Chapel near Berryville, 151.  
 Old Colonial Mantel from the Home  
     of Daniel Morgan, 104.  
 Old House at Malvern Hill, 103.  
 Old Plantation Home, 183.  
 Old Powder-Horn, Williamsburg,  
 132.  
 Old Stove in State Capitol 1770, 123.  
 Old-Time Negro Cabin, 164.

**P.**

- Passage of the James River Through  
     the Blue Ridge, 57.  
 Pendleton, Edmund, 136.  
 Pocahontas, 38.  
 Pocahontas, Rescue of Smith by, 39.

**Q.**

- Queen Elizabeth, 11.

**R.**

- Raleigh, Sir Walter, 12.  
 Rescue of Smith by Pocahontas, 39.  
 Ruins at Roanoke, 16.

**S.**

- Saint John's Church, Richmond, 130.  
     Old Pulpit of, 131.  
 Saint Paul's Church, Richmond, 210.  
 Saint Peter's Church, New Kent, 213.  
 Settlement of Maryland, 66.  
 Sinking of the *Cumberland*, 194.  
 Smith, Captain John, 22.  
     Exploring the Chesapeake,  
     41.  
 Soldiers' Monument to Confederates,  
 Hollywood, 206.

Soldiers' and Sailors' Monument,  
Libby Hill Park, 208.

Speaker's Chair, House of Burgesses,  
1700, 122.

Spring-House, Exterior and Interior,  
152.

Spotswood, Alexander, 89.  
Crossing the Blue Ridge,  
90.

Statue of Henry Clay, 211.

Stuart, J. E. B., 196.  
Monument to, Near Yellow  
Tavern, 201

Swords of Revolutionary Period,  
145.

### T.

Tecumseh, 31.

The Pines, New Kent, 102.

Tomb of Jefferson, 158.

Tomb of Monroe, 170.

### U.

University of Virginia, 112.

### V.

Virginia, Map of (front).

Virginia Treasury Note, *Fac-Simile*  
of, 1776, 148.

*Virginia* Sinking the *Cumberland*,  
194.

### W.

Washington, Houdon's Statue of  
(frontispiece).

Washington's Surveying Quarters  
at Soldiers' Rest, 115.

Room at Mount Vernon, 117.

Weaving and Spinning-Room at  
Vernon, 149.

White House of the Confederacy,  
177.

Williams's Ferry, Pamunkey River,  
212,

William and Mary College, 88.

Woodlawn, the Home of Nellie  
Custis, 150.

Wreck of the *Sea Venture*, 46.

## INDEX.

- Adams, John, delegate to first congress, 125; seconds Lee's resolutions, 137; death of (note), 157.
- Adams, Samuel, delegate to first congress, 125.
- Agriculture, 99.
- Amusements, 111.
- Amidas and Barlow; their voyage and report, 13.
- Appomattox, surrender at, 193.
- Argall, Captain Samuel, captures Pocahontas, 55; lieutenant-governor, 57; his dishonesty and recall, 59.
- Army of Northern Virginia, 180-193; address to, 186; Mr. Swinton's tribute to, 197.
- Arnold, Benedict, invades Virginia, 142.
- Bacon, Nathaniel, settles at Curl's Neck: his character, 76; chosen leader against the Indians, 77; applies for commission, 77; refused, 77; goes without it, 77; arrested, asks pardon and takes his seat in the council, 78; flees from Jamestown, 78; returns at the head of army, 78; obtains commission, 79; again proclaimed a rebel and marches on Jamestown, 80; besieges Jamestown, 81; a blot on his fame, 81; burns Jamestown, death of, dispersion of his followers, 82; his followers executed, 83.
- Bacon's Rebellion--Effects of, 84.
- Baltimore, Lord, 65; settles Maryland, 66; contest with Claiborne, 67, 72.
- Battles around Richmond, 182.
- Beauregard, P. G. T., in command at Manassas, 178; battle of Manassas, 180.
- Bennett, Richard, governor, 72.
- Berkeley, Sir William, governor, 67; his intolerance, 68; retires to Green Spring, 72; elected governor, 73; arrests Bacon, 78; collects an army and marches on Jamestown, 81; Jamestown surrendered, 81; driven out by Bacon, 82; his malignity and cruelty, 82; recalled, 83; returns to England, 84.
- Bill of Rights, the, 126, 136.
- Blackbeard, death of, 91.
- Bland, Giles, executed, 83.
- Bland, Richard, delegate to Continental Congress, 125.
- Boonsboro', battle of, 184.
- Boone, Daniel, 214.
- Boston, Tea Party, 124; British occupy, 124; port of, closed, 125.
- Botetourt, Lord, governor, 122; dissolves the House of Burgesses, 123; death of, 124; monument to his memory, 124.
- Braddock's Expedition and defeat, 117.
- Brandy Station, battle of, 196.
- British officers visit Lee's army, 186.
- Brown, John, raid; captured and hanged, 171; indignation of the people against, 171.
- Buchanan, Admiral, 194.
- Burnside, General A. E., succeeds McClellan, 187; defeated at Fredericksburg, 188.
- Burr, Aaron; his trial, 159-160.
- Butler, B. F., commanding at Fortress Monroe, 178; defeated at Big Bethel, 180.
- Butler, General M. C., incident, 202.
- Buildings, 102; of brick, 103.
- Byrd, Colonel William, visit to Germanna, 91; lays out Richmond, 92.

- Cabot, John, 10.  
 Cabot, Sebastian, 10.  
 Cadets at New Market, 191-2.  
 Calvert, George, 65.  
 Campbell, John A., interviews with Seward, 175.  
 Capitol Disaster, 207.  
 Cassein, George, captured, 37.  
 Cattle, 100.  
 Cavaliers, coming of, 71, 98, 211.  
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 188-189.  
 Charles I., execution of, 71.  
 Charles II., restored; 73; grants by, 74; his comment on Berkeley's butcheries, 83; death of, 84.  
 Charter, First, granted Virginia Company, 19; new charter, 45; great charter, 60.  
 Cheeseman, Edmund, executed, 83.  
 Church, First, 21; Established, 65; Disestablishment of, 137.  
 Civil War in England, 71.  
 Claiborne, William, 67; overthrows the government of Maryland, 72.  
 Clarke, George Rogers; expedition against British posts in Northwest, 138-140.  
 Clarke, William, accompanies Lewis across the continent, 159.  
 Classes in colony, 95; dress a badge of class, 107; distinctions abolished, 211.  
 Colleges and schools, 112.  
 Colonists, first, 13-15; second, 15; Jamestown, 20, 210; their voyage, 20; driven into the Chesapeake, 20; land at Jamestown, 20; their dangers, 21; character, 21; number, 34; mortality among, 35.  
 Colonization, 13-15, 20.  
 Colony, prosperity of, 62.  
 Committee of Correspondence, 123; of safety, 136.  
 Confederate commissioners in Washington, 174-5.  
 Confederate States government organized, 172; capital removed to Richmond, 178.  
 Confederate monuments, 208.  
 Congress, First Continental, 125; proceedings and effect, 126.  
 Constitution of Virginia adopted, 136.  
 Constitution of 1787 ratified, 156.  
 Convention in Virginia, 1774, 130.  
 Convention of 1787, 155; opposition in Virginia' 155-6.  
 Conveyances, 106.  
 Cornwallis, Lord, invades Virginia, 142-144; surrender of, 146.  
 Cromwell takes measures to reduce the colony to subjection, 72.  
 Dale, Sir Thomas, acting governor, 55.  
 Dare, Virginia, 15.  
 Davis, Honorable Jefferson, President of Confederate States, 172; treatment of, 202.  
 De Ayllon, Lucas, settlement on James river (note), 11.  
 Declaration of Independence, 137.  
 Declaration of War against South, 175.  
 De Grasse, Count, sails for the Chesapeake, 144; arrives at Yorktown, 145.  
 Dahlgren's Raid, 200.  
 Delaware, Lord, appointed governor, 45; arrival in Virginia, 50; his government, 54; vice-regal ceremonies, 54; return to England, 54; death, 55.  
 Domestic life in the colony, 109.  
 Drake, Sir Francis; his voyage around the world, 10; arrival at Roanoke, 14; carries back the colony, 15.  
 Dred Scott decision, 169.  
 Dress, 107.  
 Drummond, William, carries news to Bacon, 80; excepted from pardon, 81; hanged, 83.  
 Dunmore, Lord, governor, his character, 124; commands against western Indians, 127; suspicions against, 129; seeks to incite insurrection of slaves, 129; removes powder, 131; flees from Williamsburg, 133; depredations of, 133; defeated at Great Bridge, 133; burns Norfolk, 134; driven from Virginia, 134.  
 Duties on tea, glass and paper, 122; repealed except on tea, 123.

- Dwelling-houses, 102-104.  
 Early, General J. A., defeats Hunter, 200.  
 Education, 111.  
 Elizabeth, Queen, 10-11 / death of, 18.  
 Emancipation of slaves, 167; by President's order, 199; resolutions of Gen. John Minor, 167.  
 English discoveries and claim, 10.  
 Entail, 111.  
 "Era of Good Feeling," 162.  
 Executives of Virginia, List of, 218.  
 Exports, 100-151.  
 Fasting, a day of, 125.  
 Fire of 1608, 36.  
 First Settlers, the, 95, 210.  
 Food, 108.  
 Fort Sumter, 175-6.  
 France aids the colonies, 144.  
 Franklin, Benjamin, deputy postmaster, 89.  
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 187.  
 Fugitive slave law, 169; refusal to surrender slaves, 169.  
 Furniture, 105.  
 Gabriel's insurrection, 164.  
 Gadsden, Christopher, delegate to first congress, 125.  
 Garnett, General Robert S., sent to Western Virginia, 178.  
 Gates, Sir Thomas, member of Virginia Company, 19; deputy governor, 45; wrecked on the Bermudas, 45; arrival at Jamestown, 47; abandons the colony, 50.  
 George III., King, 119; stamp act, 120; insists on carrying on the war, 146.  
 Gettysburg, battle of, 190.  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, expedition of, 13; voyage and death, 14.  
 Goats, 100.  
 Gold fever, 36; search for gold, 43.  
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, Raleigh's speech to him, 18; member of Virginia Company, 19; member of council, 24; death, 35.  
 Government, future, considered, 155.  
 Governors of Virginia, list of, 218.  
 Grant, U. S., lieutenant-general, takes command in Virginia, 190; his campaign from the Wilderness to Petersburg, 191; at Appomattox, 193; his magnanimity, 203.  
 Great Bridge, battle of, 133.  
 Green Spring, 72.  
 Grenville, Sir Richard, conveys Lane's colony to Roanoke Island, 14; returns with supplies, 15.  
 Hansford, Colonel Thomas, in command at Jamestown, 81; surrenders to Berkeley, 81; executed, 83.  
 Harper's Ferry, capture of, 184.  
 Harrison, Benjamin, delegate to first congress, 125.  
 Harvey, Sir John, deposed, 64; restored by the king, 64.  
 Haskell, Col. John, incident of, 204.  
 Henry, Patrick, birth, education and early life, 118; "The Parsons' Cause," 118; resolutions against stamp act, 120; delegate to first congress, 125; speech in Virginia convention, 130; compels Dunmore to pay for powder, 131; appointed colonel of First regiment, 136; elected governor of State, 136; anecdote of, 143; opposes adoption of Constitution, 155; death of, 162.  
 House of Burgesses, first called, 59; denounces execution of Charles I., 71; elects Bennett governor, 72; declares supreme power to be in the assembly, 73; checks Berkeley's butcheries, 83; resolution against stamp act, 120; against deportation to England for trial, 123; non-importation resolutions, 123; taxes, 123; committee of correspondence, 123; dissolved by Dunmore, 124; resolutions not to buy tea, 125; called to consider Lord North's peace measures, 132; report of committee, 133.



- Hill, A. P., 186.
- Hooker, General Joseph, succeeds Burnside, 188; defeated at Chancellorsville, 188-9.
- Hogs, 100.
- Horses, 100.
- Household furniture, 105.
- Huguenots come to Virginia, 192; their character, 192.
- Huger, General, in command at Norfolk, 178.
- Imports, 151.
- Indians—origin of, 25; families, 26; subdivisions, 26; appearance and dress, 26; mode of life, 27; houses, 27; products, 28; characteristics, 28; weapons, 29; education, 29; religion, 30; Powhatan confederacy, 30; their wrongs, 31; Pocahontas and Tecumseh, 31; character, 31; hostility to colonists, 34; hostilities, 49, 77; massacre of 1622, 62; massacre, 1644, 68; slaves and servants, 97; Lewis's battle with, 127.
- Industries, 99, 150.
- James I., succeeds Elizabeth, 18; grants charter to Virginia Company, 19; his character, 19; dissolves London Company, 63; death of, 63.
- James II., succeeds Charles II., 84; abdicates, 85;
- Jamestown, founded, 20; attacked by Indians, 34; deserted, 50; return to, 52; attacked by Berkeley, 81; besieged by Bacon and burned, 82; capital removed from, 87.
- Jay, John, delegate to first congress, 125.
- Jackson, T. J., Valley campaign, 182; around Richmond, 182; Second Manassas, 184; capture of Harper's Ferry, 184; battle of Sharpsburg, 186; victory at Chancellorsville, 188; death of, 189.
- Johnston, Joseph E., general in command at Harper's Ferry, 178; battle of Manassas, 180; wounded at Seven Pines, 182.
- Jefferson, Thomas, report on Lord North's peace measures, 133; drafts Declaration of Independence, 137; escapes from Tarleton, 144; his services, 156; founds University of Virginia, 157; anecdotes of, 157; declines a third term, 157; death and monument, 157-8; efforts to explore the West, 158.
- Kendall, member of council, 24; attempt to desert, 35; executed, 36.
- Kitchen utensils, 105-106.
- "Knights of the Golden Horseshoe," 90.
- Labor, regulation of, 57.
- Lafayette, Marquis de, in command in Virginia, 142; revisits Virginia, 147.
- Land assigned to colonists, 58.
- Land, how acquired, 98.
- Lane, Ralph, his colony, 13; search for the South Sea, 14.
- Lawrence, Mr., carries message to Bacon, 80; excepted by Berkeley from amnesty, 81.
- Lee, Richard Henry, delegate to first congress, 125; offers resolution for independence, 137.
- Lee, Robert E., assigned to Army of Northern Virginia, 182; battles around Richmond, 182; Second Manassas, First Maryland campaign, 184; address to his army, 186; battle of Fredericksburg, 187; Chancellorsville, 188; advance into Pennsylvania, battle of Gettysburg, 190; from the Wilderness to Appomattox, 190-193.
- Lewis, General Andrew, 126; sent against the Indians, 127; battle of Point Pleasant, 127.
- Lewis Meriwether, 158; expedition to the Pacific, 159.
- Lexington, battle of, 130.
- Lincoln, Abraham, elected President, 171; early life, 174; his inaugural address, 174; calls for troops, 172, 177; assassinated by Booth, 202.
- Liberia purchased, 167.

- Live stock in colony, 100.  
 Livingston, Philip, delegate to first congress, 125.  
 London Company chartered, 19; dissolution of, 63.  
 Madison, James, advocates adoption of Federal Constitution, 156; President, 162.  
 Magruder, General J. B., 180; checks McClellan, 182.  
 Maidens, a cargo of, 60.  
 Manassas, First battle of, 180; Second battle of, 184.  
 Markets, 152.  
 Marshall, John, 155; presides at Burr's trial, 160; character, 160; anecdote of, 160.  
 Maryland, settlement of, 66; opposition in Virginia, 67.  
 Maynard, Lieutenant, kills Blackbeard, 91.  
 Mason, George, non-importation resolutions, 123; author of Bill of Rights, 126; Virginia Constitution, 136.  
 Massacre of 1622, 62; of 1644, 68.  
 McCausland, General, pursues Hunter, 200.  
 McClellan, General George B., in Western Virginia, 178; on Peninsula, 182; Seven Pines, 182; Seven-Days' battles, 182-4; retired from command, 184; recalled, 184; battle of Sharpsburg, 184; removed, 187.  
 McDowell, General, 180.  
 Mechanics, 98.  
 Medicines contraband, 199.  
 Methodism, 93.  
 Mexican war, 214.  
 Minor, General John; emancipation resolutions, 167.  
 Minute-Men, 131.  
*Monitor*, battle with the *Virginia*, 195.  
 Monroe, James, opposes adoption of Federal Constitution, 155; President, 162; a member of emancipation society, 197.  
 Monuments, Confederate, 208.  
 Negroes imported, 61; free negroes, 97; insurrections, 164; enfranchised, 205.  
 Navigation act, 74.  
 Nelson, Thomas, Governor, incident at Yorktown, 146.  
 Newport, Captain Christopher, commands fleet, 20; member of council, 24; returns to Jamestown, 42; visit to Powhatan, 42, wrecked on the Bermudas, 45.  
 Non-importation resolutions, 123.  
 Norfolk, burning of, 134.  
 North, Lord, peace measures, 132.  
 Northwest territory, 140; gift of, 167, 213.  
 Opecancanough, 37; treachery of, 44; massacre of 1622, 62; of 1644, 68; death of, 68.  
 Overseers, 97.  
 "Parsons' Cause, the," 118.  
 Patterson, General, 178; eluded by Johnston, 182.  
 Paupers, 99, 151.  
 Pennsylvania, invasion of, 190.  
 Pendleton, Edmund, delegate to first congress, 125; president of convention, 130; president of committee of safety, 136; proposes resolutions for independence, 136.  
 People, how they lived, 108, 150.  
 Percy, George, president of council, 49; his incapacity, 49.  
 "Personal Liberty Laws," 170.  
 Petersburg, siege of, 191.  
 Piedmont Virginia, 151.  
 Pocahontas rescues Smith, 38; friendship for the English, 38; entertains English, 43; warns Smith, 44; capture of, 55; anger of Powhatan, 55; her marriage, visit to England, and death, 56.  
 Point Pleasant, battle of, 127.  
 Pope, General John, 184.  
 Population in 1660, 73; in 1870, 206.  
 Post Routes established, 89.  
 Potato, the, introduced into Ireland, 37.  
 Poultry, 100.  
 Poverty of people at close of Revolution, 148; at close of late war, 205.  
 Powder, seizure of, 131.

- Powhatan, King, 34; Smith carried before him, 38; his coronation, 43; supplies corn, 44; anger at capture of Pocahontas, 55; consents to her marriage, 56; abdication of, 56; death of, 57.
- Presidents from Virginia, 162, 214.
- Primogeniture, 111, 138.
- Prisoners, treatment of, 200.
- Private soldiers of Confederacy, 196.
- Products, 99.
- Progress of the war of the Revolution, 138.
- Queen Elizabeth—her coronation, 10-11; her character and government, 11; interest in colonization, 11; grants patent to Gilbert, 13; engaged in slave-trade, 165.
- Queen Anne, 89.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, 12; introduction to the queen, 12; his first expedition, 12; second expedition, 13; anecdote of, 15; third expedition, 15; disappearance of the colony, 15; abandons colonization, 18; fate of, 18.
- Randolph, Peyton, delegate to first congress, 125.
- Randolph, Edmund, attorney-general of Virginia, 136.
- Ratcliffe, John, member of council, 24; his incapacity, 42; enmity to Smith, 45; returns to Virginia, 49; Smith refuses to yield to him, 48; insubordination, 49; killed by the Indians, 50.
- Religious controversies, 137; intolerance, 64, 65; liberty, 138; worship, 21, 47.
- Restoration, the, 73; news of in Virginia, 73.
- Revolution of 1688, 85.
- Revolutionary war, 138-146; transferred to Virginia, 142.
- Richmond, fall of, 192.
- Roads, 106.
- Roanoke Island, Lane's colony, 13-15; White's colony, 15-16.
- Robertson, James, 214.
- Rolfe, John, 47; applies to Dale for consent to marry Pocahontas, 56; marriage, 56; first to cultivate tobacco, 56.
- Rolfe, Thomas, 56.
- Royal grants, 74.
- Royalists, 211.
- Rutledge, Edward, member first congress, 125.
- Schools, Indian, 61, 111; and colleges, 112.
- Scotch-Irish, settle in the Valley, 92.
- Sedgwick, Gen. John, defeat of, 189.
- Sea Venture*, wreck of the, 45.
- Self-government, capacity of people for, illustrated, 196.
- Servants, bond, 61; indentured, 95-96; Indian, 97.
- Servile insurrections, 164.
- Seven Pines, battle of, 182.
- Seven-Days' battles, 184.
- Sevier, John, 224.
- Seward, W. H., secretary of state, reply to Confederate commissioners, 175.
- Sharpsburg, battle of, 184.
- Sherman, Roger, delegate to first congress, 125.
- Sheep, 100.
- Slaves, negro, 61; Indian, 97; refusal to surrender fugitive, 167.
- Slavery, effects of, 61, 170; responsibility for, 167; sentiment in Virginia, 165; abolition in Northern States, 169 (note).
- Slave-trade, 165; New England and, 165-6.
- Smith, G. W., governor, 163.
- Smith, Captain John, joins the Virginia Company, 19; his career, 21; imprisonment and escape, 23; character, 23; his energy, 24; procures food, 36; his capture, 37; condemnation and rescue, 38; explorations, 41; message to Hudson, 42; visits Powhatan and Opeacancanough, 44; his enemies, 45; his accident, 48; returns to England, 48; his services, 48; death and burial, 49.
- Social life, 109.
- South Sea, search for, 14, 43.
- Spanish voyages, 10.

- Somers, Sir George, member of the Virginia Company, 19; admiral under new charter, 45; wrecked on the Bermudas, 45; arrives at Jamestown, 47.
- Spotswood, Alexander, governor; his enterprises, 89; expedition to the Valley, 90; postmaster-general, 89; destroys Blackbeard, 91.
- Stamp act, resolutions of House of Burgesses, 120; repealed, 120.
- "Starving Time, the," 50.
- Suffrage, 97.
- Sumter, Fort, negotiations as to, 175; reinforcements sent to, 175; demand for evacuation of, 176; bombardment and surrender, 176; effect in the North, 176.
- Tarleton's raids, 143.
- Tatnall, Commodore, 195.
- Taxes, 120; difficulty of collecting, 149.
- Tea, duty on, 122; destroyed at Boston, 124; at Wilmington and Annapolis, 125; resolutions of House of Burgesses, 125.
- Tobacco introduced into England, 15; first cultivated, 56; the principal product, 99; the currency, 99; production of 1720, 100; exportation of, 151.
- Turkeys carried to England, 36.
- Turner, Nat., insurrection, 164.
- University of Virginia, 112, 157.
- Valley campaign, Jackson's, 182.
- Virginia named, 13; settled, 20; becomes a royal province, 63; loyal to the king, 71; Charles II. invited to, 71; submits to Cromwell, 72; protests against the "Navigation Act," 74; against king's grants, 75; stamp act, 120; declares independence, 136; in the Revolution, 138-146; adopts the Federal Constitution, 156; seeks to maintain peace, 172; refuses to furnish troops, 172; secedes, 172; in civil war, 184-197; reconstruction, 205-208; progress since the war, 207.
- Vespucci Amerigo, 10.
- Virginia Company, the, 19.
- Virginia Gazette*, 93.
- Virginia convention, 1775, 130; convention, 1788, 155.
- Virginia, The*, 193-195.
- Virginia Military Institute, the, 197.
- Virginians, origin of, 92, 210; character of, 140; mettle of, 130; to be carried to England for trial, 122; development of, 210; what they have accomplished, 212.
- Visit of British officers to Lee, 186.
- Wagon trains, 152.
- Walker, Dr. Thomas, 143, 214.
- Washington, George, birth of, 115; appointed to the navy; employed as surveyor, 115; appointed adjutant-general; mission to the French; commanding on frontier, 116; aide to Braddock, 117; commander-in-chief of Continental army, 138; at Yorktown, 145; President, 156; death of, 162.
- War, Revolutionary, 138-156; civil, 180-197; cruel conduct of, 199-200.
- Wealth, 98.
- Werowocomico, 38.
- Wesley, John, 93.
- West Virginia cut off, 206.
- Whitefield, George, 93.
- William and Mary, king and queen, 85.
- William and Mary College founded, 87, 112.
- Wingfield, Edward Maria, president Virginia council, 24; character of, 25; incapacity of, 35; attempt to desert, 35.
- Wives provided, 60.
- Wolseley, Lord, opinion of Lee, 186.
- Wounding of citizens, 133.
- Wren, Sir Christopher, 87.
- Yardley, Sir George, 59; calls first Virginia assembly, 59.
- Yorktown, army concentrated at; siege of; assault, surrender, 145-6.
- Zane, Elizabeth, 140.













LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 366 401 6